

# MANUEL D'UTILISATION

FS-2100D/FS-2100DN

FS-4100DN/FS-4200DN/FS-4300DN

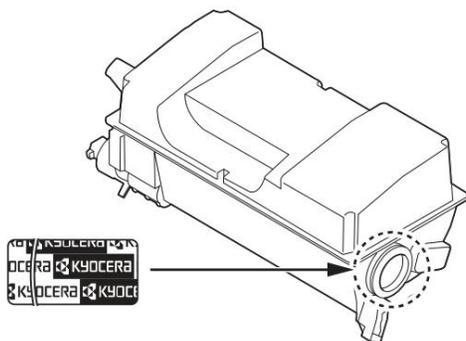


**This User Manual is for FS-2100D, FS-2100DN, FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN.**

**This Operator's Manual is intended as an aid to enable the correct use of the machine, to carry out periodic maintenance and to carry out simple repairs, in order to keep the machine in good working order.**

**We recommend using our own brand supplies. We are not responsible for any damage caused by the use of third party supplies in this machine.**

**A label (shown) assures that the supplies are our brand.**



## Guides included

The following manuals are supplied with the machine. Refer to the appropriate manual as needed.

Quick Installation Guide	Describes the procedures for installing the machine.
Safety Manual	Provides safety instructions and precautions for installing and using the machine. Be sure to read this manual before using the machine.
Safety Manual (FS-2100D/FS-2100DN/ FS-4100DN/FS-4200DN/ FS-4300DN)	Describes the machine installation space, warning spaces and other information. Be sure to read this manual before using the machine.

## Disque Product Library

User Manual (this manual)	Describes how to load paper, basic printing operations, and troubleshooting.
Command Center RX User Guide	Describes how to access the machine from a computer using an Internet browser to view and change settings.
Printer Driver User Guide	Describes how to install the printer driver and use the features of the printer.
KYOCERA Net Direct Print Operation Guide	Describes how to use the feature for printing PDF files without launching Adobe Acrobat or Reader.
KYOCERA Net Viewer User Guide	Describes how to monitor the network printing system with KYOCERA Net Viewer.
Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide	Describes how to authenticate to the machine using the ID card.
Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide	Describes how to install and configure the Data Security Kit.
PRESCRIBE Commands Technical Reference	Describes the native language of the printer (PRESCRIBE commands).
PRESCRIBE Commands Command Reference	Describes the functionality of PRESCRIBE commands and control for each type of emulation.

## Safety conventions

The sections of this manual as well as the parts of the machine marked with symbols are safety warnings, intended, on the one hand, to ensure the protection of the user, other people and surrounding objects and, on the other part, to guarantee correct and safe use of the machine. The symbols and their meanings are listed below.



**WARNING:** Failure to observe or pay attention to these points could result in serious injury or even death.



**CAUTION:** failure to observe these points or lack of attention to them may cause serious injury or cause mechanical damage.

## Symbols

The symbol  indicates that the relevant section includes safety warnings. They draw the reader's attention to specific points.



... [General warning]



... [High temperature warning]

The symbol  indicates that the relevant section contains information on prohibited operations. It precedes the specific information relating to these prohibited operations.



... [Warning of prohibited operation]



... [Disassembly prohibited]

The symbol  indicates that the relevant section contains information on operations that must be performed. It precedes the specific information relating to these required operations.



... [Alert of action required]



... [Remove the power cord plug from the outlet]



... [Always plug the machine into an earthed socket]

Contact the technician to request the replacement of this user manual if the safety warnings are illegible or if the manual itself is missing (service subject to billing).



**Note** An original that looks like a banknote cannot be corrected because this machine is equipped with a counterfeit prevention device.

# Contents

---

## Legal and safety information 1 Parts

### of the device

Parts present on the front/right side of the printer .....	1-2
Components on the left side of the printer .....	1-2
Internal parts .....	
1-3 Components on the back of the printer .....	1-4
Control panel .....	1-5

## 2 Preparation before use

Changing the network interface settings .....	
2-2 Printing a configuration page .....	
2-6 Installing the software .....	
2-7 Status Monitor .....	
2-13 Uninstalling the software (computer with Windows) .....	
2-16 Command Center RX ..	
2-17 Powering On and Off .....	2-21
Power saving function .....	
2-22 Loading paper .....	2-24

## 3 Printing

Printing from applications .....	3-2
Canceling a print job .....	3-3
Printer Driver Print Settings Screen .....	3-4
Registering a page size .....	3-6
Printer Driver Help ..	3-7
Changing the default printer driver settings (Windows 7) .....	3-7
Printing Functions .....	3-8

## 4 Control panel

Display .....	
4-2 Keys .....	
4-4 Using the Menu Selection System .....	4-7
Setting a mode selection menu .....	4-9
Print report .....	4-10
USB memory (USB memory selection) .....	4-17
Counter (Display of counter value r) .....	4-25
Paper Settings .....	4-26
Param. print .....	4-40
Network (Network Settings) .....	
4-56 Optional Network (Optional Network Settings) .....	4-64
Device Common (Selection/Setting of Common Devices) .....	4-77
Security (Security Function Settings) .....	4-100
UserName/JobAccount (Login user setting/job accounting setting) .....	4-113
Adjust/Maint. (Selection/parameter Adjustment/Maintenance) .....	4-133
Opt. (optional app settings) .....	4-136

## 5 Document box

Document box .....	5-2
Custom Box .....	5-4
Job Box .....	5-24
Computer Settings (Printer Driver) .	5-37
6 Status	

## Menu Displaying the Status Menu Screen .....

6-2 Job Status .....	6-2
----------------------	-----

---

Work log .....	6-4 Keypad
USB .....	6-5 Wireless
network .....	6-5

**7 Maintenance**

Replacing the toner cartridge .....	7-2
Replacing the Waste Toner Box .....	7-6
Cleaning the printer .....	7-8
Prolonged non-use and moving of the printer .....	7-10

**8 Troubleshooting**

General Recommendations .....	8-2 Print Quality
Problems .....	8-4 Messages
error .....	8-6 Clearing Paper
Jams .....	8-18

**Annex**

Character input method .....	A-2
About options .....	A-5
Memory Expansion Modules .....	A-6
General Description of Options ....	A-9
Paper .....	A-13
Specifications .....	A-24

**Glossary**

**Index**

## Legal and safety information

---



**CAUTION NO RESPONSIBILITY WILL BE ASSUMED FOR ANY DAMAGE CAUSED BY INCORRECT INSTALLATION.**

### Note on software

SOFTWARE USED WITH THIS PRINTER MUST SUPPORT THIS PRINTER'S EMULATION MODE. The printer is by default configured to emulate the PCL or KPD L format.

#### Notice

Information in this manual is subject to change without notice. Pages may be added in later versions. We apologize to the user for any technical inaccuracies or typographical errors in this version.

No responsibility will be engaged in case of accidents occurring during the application of the procedures described in this manual. Similarly, no responsibility for any defects in the firmware (software contained in the ROM) of the printer will be engaged.

This manual and any copyrighted material sold or bundled with the printer (or furnished at the time of sale) is copyrighted. All rights reserved. Copying or reproduction of this manual, in whole or in part, is copyrighted and is prohibited without the prior written consent of KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc. Any copying of all or part of this manual, or any subject matter subject to copyright, must contain the same copyright notice as the material copied.

### Trademarks

- PRESCRIBE and KPD L are trademarks of Kyocera Corporation.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7 and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- PCL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.
- Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.
- Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.
- NetWare is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.
- IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.
- AppleTalk, Bonjour, Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other pays.
- All European fonts installed on this machine are licensed from Monotype Imaging Inc.
- Helvetica, Palatino and Times are registered trademarks of Linotype GmbH.
- ITC Avant Garde Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC ZapfChancery and ITC ZapfDingbats are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.
- UFST™ MicroType® fonts from Monotype Imaging Inc. are installed on this machine.

All other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The ™ and ® symbols are not used in this user manual.

## License Agreements

### GPL/LGPL

This product contains GPL (<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>) and/or LGPL (<http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>) software composing its firmware. You can obtain the source code and you are allowed to copy, redistribute and modify it under the terms of the GPL/LGPL license. For more information, including source code availability, visit <http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com/gpl/>.

### Open SSL License

Copyright © 1998-2006 OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3 All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:  
"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"
- 4 The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission.  
For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).
- 5 Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
- 6 Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### Original SSLeay License

Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young ([eay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eay@cryptsoft.com)) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young ([eay@cryptsoft.com](mailto:eay@cryptsoft.com)). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are adhered to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1 Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2 Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3 All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:  
"This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)"  
The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
- 4 If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement:  
"This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

## Monotype Imaging License Agreement

1 Software shall mean the digitally encoded, machine readable, scalable outline data as encoded in a special format as well as the UFST Software.

2 You agree to accept a non-exclusive license to use the Software to reproduce and display weights, styles and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols (Typefaces) solely for your own customary business or personal purposes at the address stated on the registration card you return to Monotype Imaging. Under the terms of this License Agreement, you have the right to use the Fonts on up to three printers. If you need to have access to the fonts on more than three printers, you need to acquire a multi-user license agreement which can be obtained from Monotype Imaging. Monotype Imaging retains all rights, title and interest to the Software and Typefaces and no rights are granted to you other than a License to use the Software on the terms expressly set forth in this Agreement.

3 To protect proprietary rights of Monotype Imaging, you agree to maintain the Software and other proprietary information concerning the Typefaces in strict confidence and to establish reasonable procedures regulating access to and use of the Software and Typefaces.

4 You agree not to duplicate or copy the Software or Typefaces, except that you may make one backup copy. You agree that any such copy shall contain the same proprietary notices as those appearing on the original.

5 This License shall continue until the last use of the Software and Typefaces, unless sooner terminated. This License may be terminated by Monotype Imaging if you fail to comply with the terms of this License and such failure is not remedied within thirty (30) days after notice from Monotype Imaging. When this License expires or is terminated, you shall either return to Monotype Imaging or destroy all copies of the Software and Typefaces and documentation as requested.

6 You agree that you will not modify, alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software.

7 Monotype Imaging warrants that for ninety (90) days after delivery, the Software will perform in accordance with Monotype Imaging-published specifications, and the diskette will be free from defects in material and workmanship. Monotype Imaging does not warrant that the Software is free from all bugs, errors and omissions.

The parties agree that all other warranties, expressed or implied, including warranties of fitness for a particular purpose and merchantability, are excluded.

8 Your exclusive remedy and the sole liability of Monotype Imaging in connection with the Software and Typefaces is repair or replacement of defective parts, upon their return to Monotype Imaging.

In no event will Monotype Imaging be liable for lost profits, lost data, or any other incidental or consequential damages, or any damages caused by abuse or misapplication of the Software and Typefaces.

9 Massachusetts U.S.A. law governs this Agreement.

10 You shall not sublicense, sell, lease, or otherwise transfer the Software and/or Typefaces without the prior written consent of Monotype Imaging.

11 Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at FAR 252-227-7013, subdivision (b)(3)(ii) or subparagraph (c)(1)(ii), as appropriate. Further use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions applicable to restricted rights software as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c)(2).

12 You acknowledge that you have read this Agreement, understand it, and agree to be bound by its terms and conditions. Neither party shall be bound by any statement or representation not contained in this Agreement. No change in this Agreement is effective unless written and signed by properly authorized representatives of each party. By opening this diskette package, you agree to accept the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

## Compliance and Conformity

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The use of a non-shielded interface cable with the referenced device is prohibited.

**CAUTION** — The changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions; (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The above warning is valid only in the United States of America.

### Interface connectors

**IMPORTANT** Make sure the printer is turned off before connecting or disconnecting an interface cable from the printer. To protect the electronic components inside the printer from static electricity discharge from the interface connectors, cover each unused interface connector with the protective cap provided.



**Note** Use shielded interface cables.

### Canadian Department of Communications Compliance Statement

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

### Notice of compliance with the standards of the Ministère des Communications du Canada

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

## Energy saving function

To reduce energy consumption when it is on standby, the machine is equipped with an energy-saving control function for switching to standby mode in which energy consumption is automatically reduced to a minimum at some time after the machine was last used. For more information, refer to Power Saving Function on page 2-22.

### Standby

The device automatically goes into sleep mode 1 minute after it was last used. It is possible to extend the period of inactivity after which the machine enters sleep mode. For more information, see Tempor. standby (Standby timeout).

There are two sleep modes: Quick Resume and Power Saver. The default setting is Power Saver mode.

### Quick Resume Mode

Resuming from sleep mode is faster than when using Power Saver mode. The machine automatically resumes operation and printing when a job is detected.

### Energy saving mode

It reduces power consumption more than Quick Recovery mode.

### Stop delay

If the printer is not used during sleep mode, the machine is automatically turned off. The Shutdown Delay is used to set the delay before power down. The factory setting for time before power off is 1 hour.

## Impression recto verso

This printer includes duplex printing as standard. For example, by printing two single-sided originals on a single sheet of paper in Duplex printing, the amount of paper used can be reduced.

Duplex printing reduces paper consumption and helps conserve forest resources. Duplexing also reduces the amount of paper that needs to be purchased and therefore costs. It is recommended that machines that can print duplex are set to duplex mode as the default.

## Resource Saving - Paper

To preserve and sustainably use forest resources, it is recommended to use recycled and virgin paper certified under environmental stewardship initiatives or with recognized eco-labels, compliant with EN 12281:2002\*1 or any equivalent.

This machine also supports printing on 64 gsm paper. This paper contains less raw materials and can contribute to an additional saving of forest resources.

\*1: EN12281:2002 "Printing and office paper - Specification for photocopying paper for printing processes reproduction par toner sec »

The dealer and technician can provide information on recommended paper types.

## Benefits of "power management" for the environment

To reduce power consumption when not in use, this machine is equipped with a power management function that automatically enters power saving mode after a certain period of non-use. Although the machine takes a few moments to return to READY mode when coming out of energy saving mode, a considerable reduction in energy consumption is possible.

It is recommended that the machine be operated with the power saving mode activation time set to the default setting.

## Energy Star (ENERGY STAR®)



As a company participating in the ENERGY STAR® program, we wanted this machine to meet the ENERGY STAR® standards.

ENERGY STAR® is a voluntary energy efficiency program designed to develop and promote the use of energy efficient products to prevent global warming. By purchasing ENERGY STAR® qualified products, customers can help reduce greenhouse gas emissions during product use and reduce energy costs.

## EN ISO 7779

The highest sound pressure level is 70 dB (A) or less according to EN ISO 7779.

## EK1-ITB 2000

The device is not intended for use in the immediate field of vision at a computer workstation. In order to avoid disturbing reflections at the computer workstation, this product must not be placed in the immediate field of vision.

## Environment

The operating environment conditions are as follows:

- Temperature: 50 to 90.5 ° F (10 to 32.5 ° C)
- Humidity: 15 to 80%

However, incorrect environmental conditions may affect image quality. Avoid the following locations when selecting a home site for the machine.

- Avoid proximity to a window or direct exposure to sunlight.
- Avoid places subject to vibration.
- Avoid locations subject to large temperature fluctuations.
- Avoid places directly exposed to hot air or cold air.
- Avoid poorly ventilated places.

If the floor covering is not very resistant, it may be damaged by the rollers when moving the machine later.

Small amounts of ozone are released during printing operations, but these amounts pose no risk to humans. However, if the machine is used for an extended period in a poorly ventilated room or if a very large number of copies are printed, the odor given off may become bothersome. Therefore, to maintain a suitable working environment for print jobs, we recommend that the room is well ventilated.

## Precautions for Handling Consumables

Do not attempt to incinerate parts containing toner. Dangerous sparks can cause burns.



Keep parts containing toner out of the reach of children.



If toner leaks from any part containing toner, avoid inhalation, ingestion, and contact with eyes or skin.



- If toner is inhaled, move to a ventilated area and gargle with large amounts of water. In case of cough, consult a doctor.
- If toner is swallowed, rinse your mouth and drink 1 or 2 glasses of water to dilute the product in the stomach. Whether necessary, consult a doctor.
- If toner gets in your eyes, rinse thoroughly with running water. In case of persistent discomfort, consult doctor.
- If toner gets on your skin, wash it off with soap and water.

Do not attempt to pry open or destroy any parts containing toner.



## Other precautions

Return the used toner cartridge and waste toner box to the dealer or service center.  
Toner cartridges and waste toner boxes will be recycled or destroyed according to local regulations.

Do not store the machine in a room exposed to direct sunlight.

Store the machine in a room with a temperature below 40°C and not at risk of sudden variations in temperature or humidity.

If the machine will not be used for an extended period, protect the paper from moisture by removing it from the paper tray and MP tray and placing it in its original packaging.

## Laser Safety (Europe)

Laser radiation can be harmful to the human body. Therefore, the laser radiation emitted inside the machine is hermetically sealed in the protective case and the outer cover. Under normal conditions of machine use, there is no radiation leakage from the machine.

In accordance with IEC 60825-1:2007, the machine is classified as a class 1 laser product.

**CAUTION** Performing procedures other than those described in this manual may result in hazardous exposure to laser radiation.

This label is affixed to the laser scanning unit inside the machine and is not directly accessible to the user.

<b>DANGER</b>	• CLASS 3B LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
<b>ATTENTION</b>	• CLASSE 3B RAYONNEMENT LASER EN CAS D'OUVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE AU FAISCEAU.
<b>VORSICHT</b>	• KLASSE 3B LASERSTRAHLUNG, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
<b>ATTENZIONE</b>	• CLASSE 3B RADIAZIONE LASER IN CASO DI APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL FASCIO.
<b>PRECAUCION</b>	• CLASSE 3B RADIACIONE LASER CUANDO SE ABRE. EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.
<b>VARO!</b>	• AVATTAESSA OLET ALTTIINA LUOKAN 3B LASERSÄTEILYLLÄ. ÄLÄ KATSO SÄTEESEEN.
	<b>警告</b> ・该产品为3B类激光产品，打开盖子后会有激光辐射， 请避免光束照射。
	<b>警告</b> ・該產品為3B類激光產品，打開蓋子後會有激光輻射， 請避免光束照射。
	<b>위험</b> ・CLASS 3B 가시 레이저광선을 직접 보지마십시오.
	<b>警告</b> ・ここを開くとクラス3Bレーザー光がでます。 ビームを直接見たり、触れないでください。

# About User Manual

This user manual contains the following chapters:

**Chapter 1 - Parts of the device** This chapter describes the names of the parts.

**Chapter 2 - Preparation for use**

This chapter explains the necessary preparations and settings before use and how to load paper.

**Chapter 3 - Printing**

This chapter explains how to print from a computer.

**Chapter 4 - Control Panel**

This chapter explains how to configure the printer from the control panel.

**Chapter 5 - Document Box**

This chapter explains the document box function.

**Chapter 6 - Status Menu**

This chapter explains how to check job status and job history, and how to cancel jobs being printed or waiting to be printed.

**Chapter 7 - Maintenance**

This chapter explains how to replace the toner cartridge and clean the printer.

**Chapter 8 - Troubleshooting**

This chapter explains how to handle error messages, crashes, and other problems.

**Annex**

This section explains the character entry method and provides an overview of optional products and printer specifications.

## Conventions

This manual uses the following typographical conventions.

Convention	Description	Example
Text in italics	Used to emphasize a keyword, phrase, or reference to additional information.	To replace the toner cartridge, see <i>Replacing the Toner Cartridge</i> , on page 3-2.
Gras	Used to indicate software keys.	Click <b>OK</b> to start printing.
Bold in square brackets	Used to denote control panel keys.	Press <b>[OK]</b> to resume printing.
Remark	Used to provide additional or useful information about a function.	 <b>Note</b> Check the network address settings with your network administrator.
Important	Used to provide important information.	<b>IMPORTANT</b> Make sure the paper is not folded, curled, or damaged.
Attention	Indicates mandatory precautions to avoid any risk of injury or damage to the machine and the associated procedure.	 <b>CAUTION</b> The fuser inside the printer is hot. Do not touch it with your hands, you risk burning yourself.
Warning	Used to warn the user of any risk of bodily injury.	 <b>WARNING</b> If you are shipping the printer, remove and pack the processing unit and drum unit in a plastic bag. plastic and ship the printer separately.



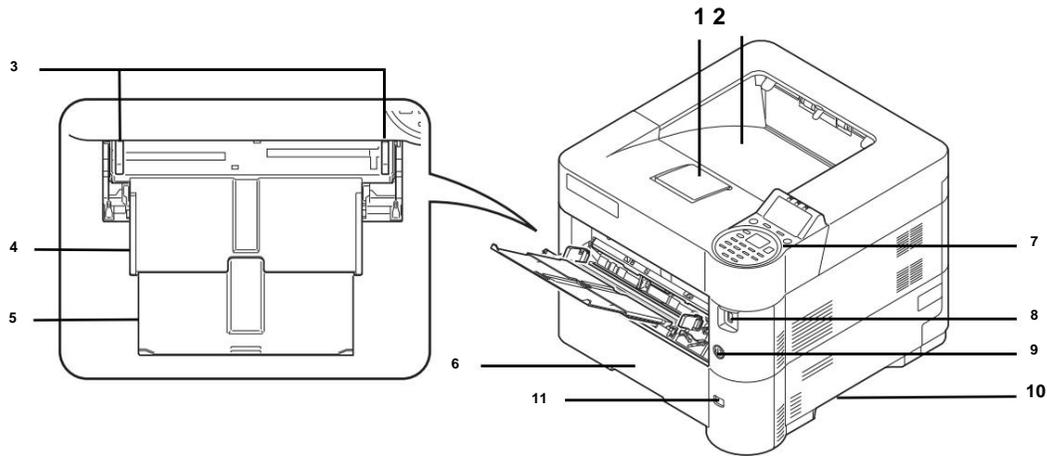
# 1 Parts of the device

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

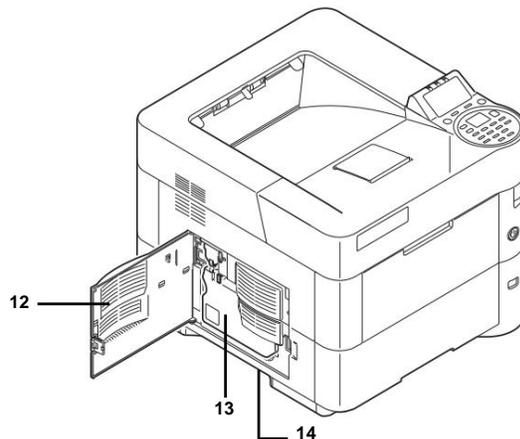
Components on the front/right side of the printer.....	1-2
Components on the left side of the printer .....	1-2 Internal
parts.....	1-3 Parts
present on the rear panel of the printer.....	1-4 Control
Panel.....	1-5

## Parts on the front/right side of the printer



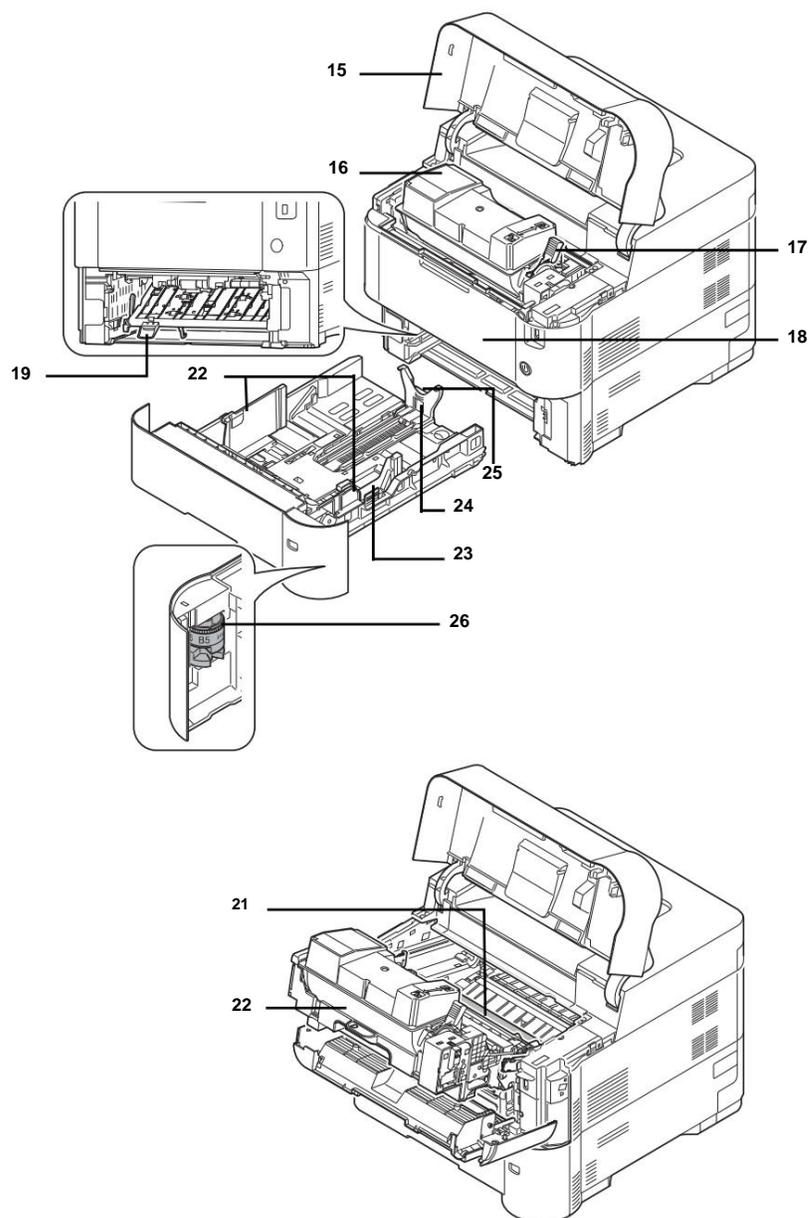
- 1 Paper stopper
- 2 Upper tray
- 3 Paper width guides (MP tray)
- 4 MP (multipurpose) tray
- 5 MP Tray Support Tray Section
- 6 Tray 1
- 7 Control panel
- 8 USB memory slot
- 9 Power switch
- 10 Handles
- 11 Paper size window

## Parts on the left side of the printer



- 12 Left cover
- 13 Waste toner box
- 14 Handles

## Internal elements



**15 Top cover**

**16 Toner Cartridge**

**17 Locking lever**

**18 Front cover**

**19 Capot avant recto**

**20 Developer**

**21 Heating Roller**

**22 Paper Width Guides**

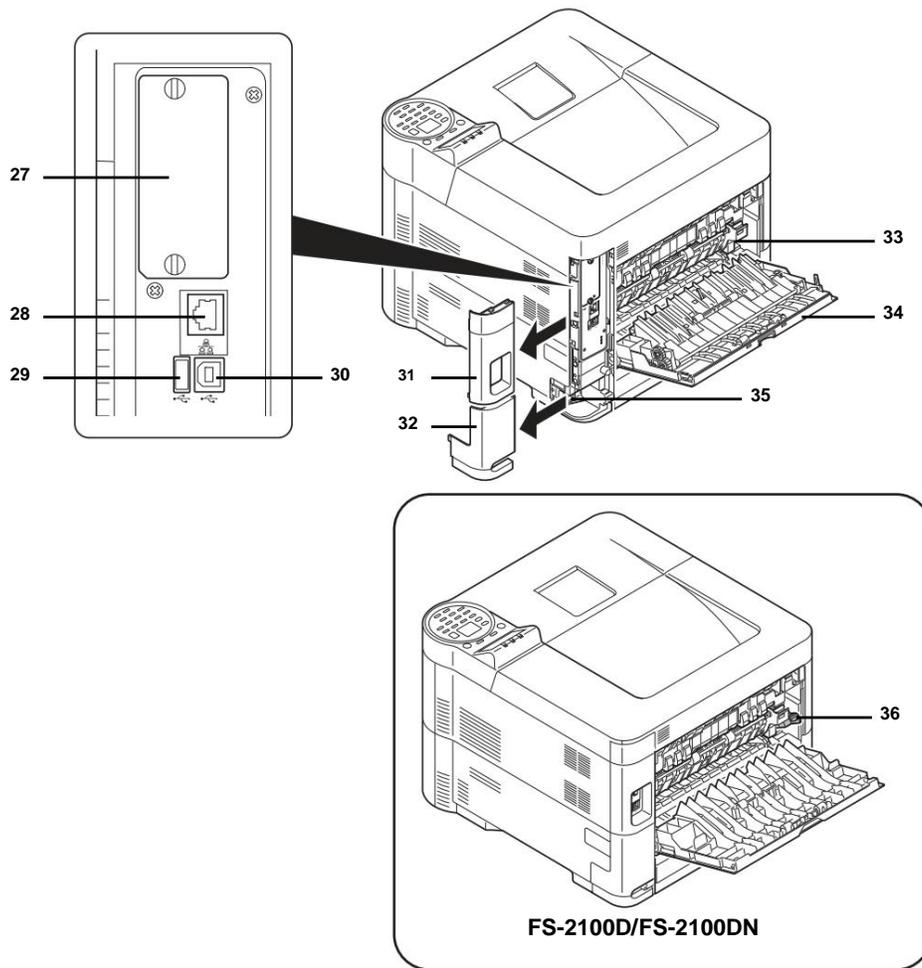
**23 Paper width adjustment tab**

**24 Paper length guide**

**25 Paper length adjustment tab**

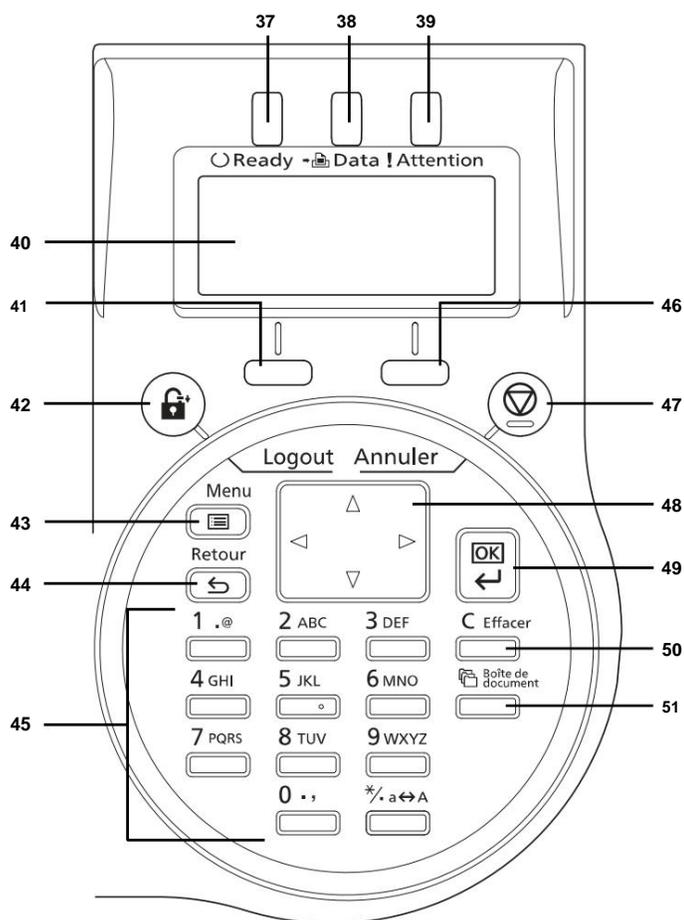
**26 Paper size dial**

## Parts on the back of the printer



- 27 Slot for optional interface card
- 28 Network interface connector (network-capable models only)
- 29 Port USB (pour Card Authentication Kit)
- 30 USB interface connector
- 31 Interface cover
- 32 Power cord connector cover
- 33 Fusing unit cover
- 34 Rear cover
- 35 Power cord connector
- 36 Envelope selector (Supported on FS-2100D/FS-2100DN.)

## Control Panel



- 37 Ready light
- 38 Data LED
- 39 Attention light
- 40 Display
- 41 [Left Select] key
- 42 Touche [Logout]
- 43 Touche [Menu]
- 44 [Back] key
- 45 Number keys
- 46 [Right Select] key
- 47 [Cancel] key
- 48 Arrow keys
- 49 [OK] key
- 50 [Clear] key
- 51 [Document Box] key



## 2 Preparation for use

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

Changing network interface settings.....	2-2
Printing a configuration page.....	2-6
Installing the software .....	2-7
Status Monitor .....	2-13
Uninstalling the software (computer with Windows).....	2-16
Command Center RX .....	2-17
Switching on and off .....	2-21
Energy saving function .....	2-22
Loading paper .....	2-24

## Changing network interface settings

This printer supports TCP/IP (IPv4), TCP/IP (IPv6), IPP, SSL Server, IPSec, and security level.

The table below shows the items needed for each setting.

Configure the printer's network settings according to your PC and network environment.

Menu	Submenu		Setting	
Network	Config. TCP/IP	TCP/IP	On Off	
		Param. IPv4	DHCP	On Off
			Auto-IP	On Off
			IP address	IP address
			Mask under res.	IP address
			Default Gateway IP Address	
			Hello	On Off
			Param. IPv6	TCP/IP(IPv6)
		RA(Stateless)		On Off
		DHCPv6		On Off
		NetBEUI protocol details		On Off
			SNMPv3	On Off
			FTP(Server)	On Off
			SNMP	On Off
			SMTP	On Off
			POP3	On Off
			Port Raw	On Off
			LPD	On Off
			HTTP	On Off
LDAP	On Off			
Restart network		Yes No		

Menu	Submenu			Setting	
Security	Network Security	Impression WSD		On Off	
		Improved WSD		On Off	
		EnhancedWSD(SSL)		On Off	
		IPP		On Off	
		Config. SSL	SSL	Stop/ Walking	On Off
				AES/DES/3DES encryption	
			IPP sur SSL		On Off
		HTTPS		On Off	
		IPSec		On Off	
		ThinPrint	On off		On Off
			ThinPrintOverSSL		On Off
		Interface LAN		Auto/10BASE-Half/ 10BASE-Full/ 100BASE-Half/ 100BASE-Full/ 1000BASE-T	



Note When the network settings have been changed, restart the machine's network card. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account. For more information, refer to the Restart section. network. (Restarting the Network Card) on page 4-63.

## Network Settings

This section describes the settings for using DHCP or when an IP address is entered while TCP(IPv4) is selected. For more information about the settings, refer to Network (Network Settings) on page 4-56. Also, for how to use the menu selection system, refer to Using the Menu Selection System on page 4-7.



Note When entering an IP address manually, check the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway with the system administrator.

```

Menu:                               a b
*****_
2 USB memory
3 Counter
      [ To leave ]

```

```

Network:                             a b
*****_
2 Restart. network.
      [ To leave ]

```

### 1 When the printer displays Ready to print, please wait.

and Treatment, press [Menu]. The mode selection menu is displayed.

### 2 Press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select Network.

### 3 Press [OK]. The Network menu appears.

## Verifying TCP/IP Enabled

This section explains the configuration method for IPv4, but TCP/IP must also be Enabled for IPv6 configuration.

```

Config. TCP/IP: a b
*****_

2 Param. IPv4
3 Param. IPv6
           [ To leave ]
  
```

**4** Select Setup. TCP/IP and press [OK]. The screen of menu Config. TCP/IP s'affiche.

```

TCP/IP: a b
1 Disabled
*****_
  
```

**5** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select TCP/IP.

**6** Press [OK]. The TCP/IP screen appears.

**7** Verify that Enabled is selected. If Disabled is selected, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On.



Note “\*” is displayed for the setting that has been selected.

```

Config. TCP/IP: a b
*****_

2 Param. IPv4
3 Param. IPv6
           [ To leave ]
  
```

**8** Press [OK]. The TCP/IP setting is set and the Config. TCP/IP is displayed again.

## Enabling or disabling DHCP

Select On when using a DHCP server to automatically obtain an IP address. Select Off to enter an IP address.

```

Param. IPv4: a b
*****_

2 Auto-IP
3 IP address
           [ To leave ]
  
```

**9** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. IPv4.

**10** Press [OK]. The Param. IPv4 is displayed.

```

DHCP: a b
1 Disabled
*****_
  
```

**11** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select DHCP.

**12** Press [OK]. The DHCP screen appears.

```

Param. IPv4: a b
**0.0.0.0*****_
2 Auto-IP
3 IP address
[ To leave ]

```

13 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Off or On.

14 Press [OK]. The DHCP setting is set and the Param. IPv4 is displayed again.



Note DHCP is active when Enabled is selected. Press [Menu] to exit the mode selection menu.

When Disabled is chosen, continue with entering the IP address.

### Entering an IP address

If DHCP is set to Disabled, enter the IP address manually.

```

IP address: a b
/**0.0.0.0

```

15 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select IP Address.

16 Press [OK]. The IP Address screen appears.

17 Use the numeric keys or  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the IP address.

It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.

Increase or decrease numbers by pressing  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .

Use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to change input position, shown highlighted.

18 Press [OK]. The IP address is stored and the Param.

IPv4 is displayed again.

```

Param. IPv4: 1 a b
DHCP
2 Auto-IP
**0.0.0.0*****_
[ To leave ]

```

### Entering the subnet mask

When DHCP is set to Off, enter the subnet mask manually.

```

Sub-Res Mask: ab
/**0.0.0.0

```

19 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Subnet Mask.

20 Press [OK]. The Mask screen under res. is displayed.

21 Use the numeric keys or  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to define the mask of subnet.

It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.

The input method is the same as for the IP address.

```

Param.                a b
IPv4: ***** -
5 Gateway def.
6 Hello
                [ To leave ]

```

**22** Press [OK]. The subnet mask is stored and the Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

## Entering the default gateway

When DHCP is set to Disabled, enter the default gateway manually.

```

Default gateway: ab

/**0. 0. 0. 0

```

**23** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Default Gateway.

**24** Press [OK]. The Gateway Def. is displayed.

**25** Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the default gateway.

It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.

The input method is the same as for the IP address.

**26** Press [OK]. The default gateway is memorized and the menu Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

The network settings are now configured. Press [Menu] to exit the mode selection menu.



**Note** When the network settings have been changed, restart the machine's network card. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account. For more information, refer to the Restart section. network. (Restarting the Network Card) on page 4-63.

## Printing a Configuration Page

After completing the network settings, print a status page. The status page allows you to check a variety of information, including addresses and network protocols.

To print a status page, select Status Page from the Print Report menu. See Print Report on page 4-10 for more information.

## Installation of the software

Before installing the printer driver and utilities from the Product Library disc, make sure the printer is plugged in and connected to the computer.

### Software

The following software can be installed from the supplied Product Library disc.

In Express Mode, the KX Driver and fonts are installed automatically. In Custom Mode, select and install the software.

● : Installed by default. ○ : Installed if selected.

Software	Function Description	Installation method	
		Mode Express	Mode Custom
KX DRIVER	Printing Driver for printing files on a computer with the machine. This printer driver enables full use of the machine's functions.	●	○
KX XPS DRIVER	Printer driver for XPS format (XML Paper Specification) developed by Microsoft Corporation (Windows 7, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008/R2 only).	-	○
Mini PCL driver	A Microsoft mini-driver type driver that emulates and prints in PCL and KPDL. KPDL is Kyocera's implementation of the PostScript language. With this driver, it is possible to use only a limited number of machine functions and optional functions.	-	○
Mini KPDL driver		-	○
KYOCERA Net Viewer Utility	Utility that allows machine monitoring when connected to a network.	-	○
KYOCERA Net Direct Print	Impression simple de document PDF.	-	○
Polices	These are screen fonts equivalent to printer fonts.	●	○

### Installing the software under Windows.

If you are connecting this printer to a computer with Windows, perform the following steps to install the printer driver. The example shown shows how to connect the printer to a computer with Windows 7.



Note On Windows operating systems, you must be logged in with administrator rights to install the printer driver.

It is possible to use Express Mode or Custom Mode to install the software. Express Mode automatically detects connected printers and installs the required software. Use Custom Mode to specify the printer port and select the software to install.

#### 1 Turn on the computer and start Windows.

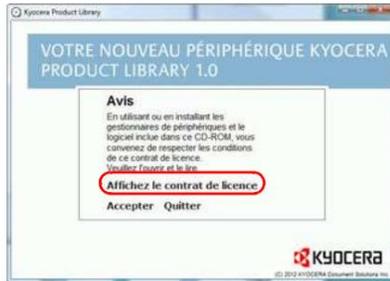
If the Found New Hardware Wizard dialog box appears, click Cancel.

- 2 Insert the Product Library disc that came with the printer into the computer's optical drive. In Windows 7, Windows Server 2008/R2 and Windows Vista, the user account management window is displayed. Click Yes. The installer launches.



Note If the installation wizard does not launch automatically, open the Product Library disc window in Windows Explorer and double-click Setup.exe.

- 3 Click View License Agreement and Read License Agreement. Click Accept.

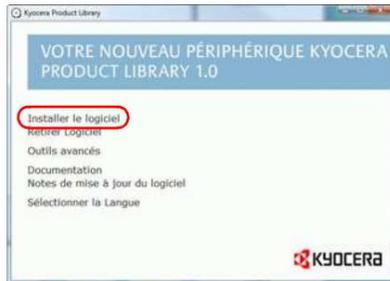


- 4 Click Install Software.

The installation wizard starts.

From this point, the procedure differs depending on your version of Windows and your connection method. Perform the correct procedure for your connection type.

- Mode Express
- Custom Mode



## Mode Express

In Express Mode, the installer automatically detects the printer when it is turned on. Use Express Mode for standard connection methods.

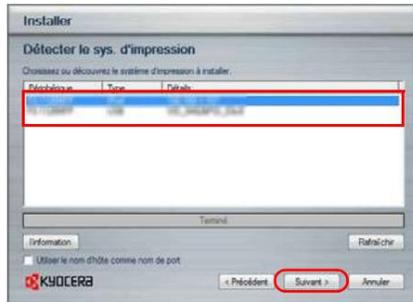


- 1 In the window for choosing the installation method, select Express Mode. The printer detection window appears and the installer detects the connected printers. If the installer does not detect a printer, check that the printer is connected via USB or a network and that it is turned on. Then return to the printer detection window.



Note The information displayed in the Windows 7 and Windows Vista/XP installation dialog boxes is slightly different, but the installation procedure is the same.

Network connection is only on models network compatible.



## 2 Select the printers to install and click Next.



**Note** If the Found New Hardware Wizard window appears, click Cancel. If a hardware installation warning message appears, click Continue.



## 3 It is possible to customize the printer name in the installation parameters window. This name will be displayed in the Printer window and in printer lists displayed in applications. Specify whether you want to share the printer name or set the printer as an existing printer, then click Next.

**IMPORTANT** Step 3 only appears if the printer is connected via network. It does not appear if the printer is connected via USB.

Network connection is only on network-enabled models.

## 4 A window appears for you to check the settings.

Carefully review the settings, then click Install.



**Note** If the Windows Security window appears, click Install this driver software anyway.

## 5 A message appears indicating that the printer has been successfully installed. Click Finish to exit the Printer Setup Wizard and return to the Product Library disc main menu.

If the device setting dialog box is displayed after clicking Finish, it is possible to specify settings for items such as optional features installed on the printer. It is also possible to specify device parameters after exiting the installation. For details, refer to the Printer Driver User Guide on the Product Library disc.

This completes the printer driver installation procedure. Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the system, if necessary.

## Custom mode

Use Custom Mode to specify the printer port and select the software to install.

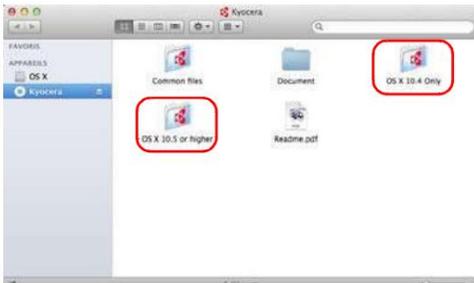
For example, if you do not want to replace the fonts installed on your computer, select Custom Mode and uncheck the Fonts box in the utility tab.



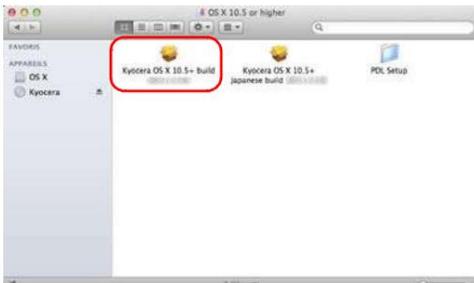
- 1 Select Custom Mode.
- 2 Follow the instructions in the installation wizard window, then select the software bundles to install and specify the port, etc. For details, refer to the Printer Driver User Guide on the Product Library disc.

## Installing on a Macintosh computer

- 1 Turn on the printer and the Macintosh computer.
- 2 Insert the Product Library disc that came with the printer into the Macintosh's optical drive.
- 3 Double-click the Product Library disc icon displayed on the desk.
- 4 Double-click OS X 10.4 Only or OS X 10.5 or higher depending on your version of Mac OS.



- 5 Double-click Kyocera OS X 10.x.



- 6 The printer driver installer starts.
- 7 Choose Destination, Installation Type and install the printer driver as instructed by the installation software instructions.



**Note** In addition to Typical Installation, Installation Type options include Custom Installation, which lets you specify the components to install.

**IMPORTANT** In the authentication screen, enter the name and password used to connect to the operating system.

This completes the printer driver installation. Then specify the print settings.



If an IP or AppleTalk connection is used, the settings below are required. If a USB connection is used, the printer is automatically recognized and connected.

**8** Open System Preferences and click Printers & scanners.



**9** Click the (+) symbol to add the printer driver installed.



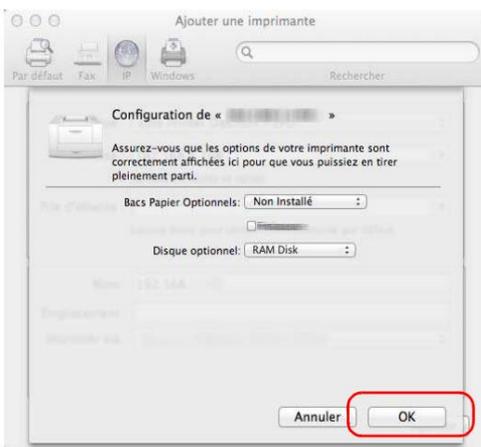
**10** Click the IP icon for an IP connection, then enter the IP address and printer name.



For a Bonjour connection, click on the default icon and select the printer for which Bonjour appears in Connection.



11 Select the installed printer driver and click Add.



12 Select the options available for the printer and click OK.



13 The selected printer is added. This completes the procedure of printer setting.

## Status monitor

The Status Monitor monitors printer status and provides continuous reporting. It also allows you to specify and modify printer settings not included in the KX driver.

The Status Monitor is installed automatically during KX driver installation.

## Access to Status Monitor

Use one of the methods listed below to launch the Status Monitor.

- **Start at start of print:**  
When a printer is specified and a print job is started, an instance of the Status Monitor is launched for each printer name. If starting the Status Monitor is requested for multiple printers, instances are started for each printer that requests them.
- **Launch from KX Driver properties:**  
Click the Status Monitor button in the Advanced tab. Then click on the Open Status Monitor button in the Status Monitor dialog box to launch the Status Monitor.

## Exit Status Monitor

Use one of the methods listed below to exit the Status Monitor.

- **Exit manually:**  
Right-click on the Status Monitor icon in the taskbar and select Exit from the menu to exit the Status Monitor.
- **Exit automatically:**  
The Status Monitor automatically closes after 5 minutes of inactivity.

## Screen preview

The Status Monitor screen preview is as follows.



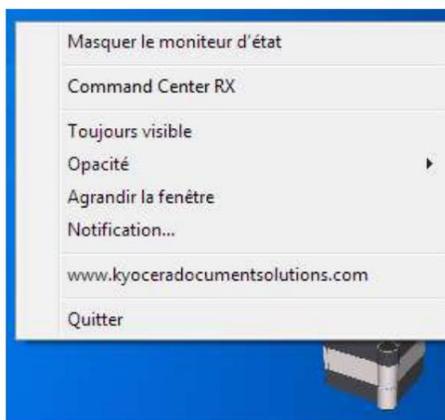
### pop-up window

If an informational notification event occurs, a pop up window is displayed. This window only appears when the 3D display is open on the desktop.

### 3D display

It displays the status of the monitored printer as a 3D image. It is possible to show or hide the 3D display from the menu that appears by right-clicking on the status monitor icon.

If an informational notification event occurs, the 3D display and an audible alert are used to notify you. For more information on sound notification settings, refer to Notification Settings on page 2-15.



### Status monitor icon

When the Status Monitor is running, its icon appears in the taskbar notification area. When the cursor is placed over the icon, the printer name is displayed. Right-click on the Status Monitor icon to adjust the options below.

#### Show/Hide Status Monitor

Shows or hides the Status Monitor icon.

#### Command Center RX

If the printer is connected to a TCP/IP network and has its own IP address, use a web browser to access Command Center RX and change or verify network settings. For more information, see Command Center RX User Guide.

#### always visible

Places the Status Monitor above all other active windows.

#### Opacity

Adjusts the status monitor to let a variable amount of background filter through the image. Select a percentage between 20 and 100.

#### Maximize window

Doubles the size of the Status Monitor window.

#### Notification...

Specify the Notification setting for the Status Monitor. For more information, refer to Notification Settings on page 2-15.

#### [www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com](http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com)

Access to the KYOCERA Document Solutions global website.

#### To leave

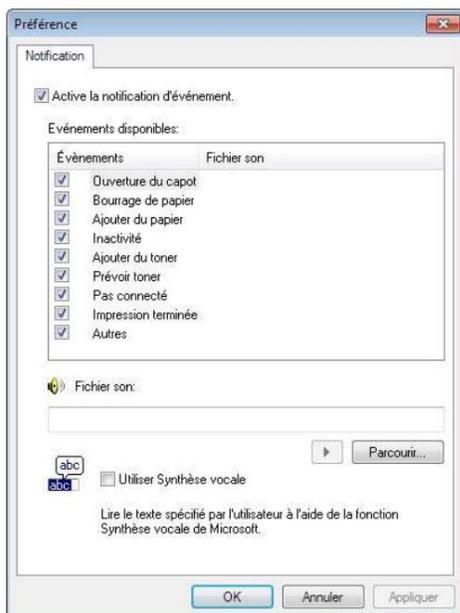
Exit Status Monitor.

## Notification settings

Use the Notification option to set up the status monitor.

The Notification tab contains the following elements.

**IMPORTANT** To confirm the Notification tab settings, the computer must have a sound card and speakers.



### Enable event notification

Select to enable or disable event monitoring in Available Events.

### sound file

A sound file can be selected if sound notification is required. Click Browse to search for the sound file.

### Use Text-to-speech

Check this box to enter the text that should be reproduced during events. Although a sound file is not necessary, this function is available for Windows XP or higher.

To use this feature, follow these steps.

- 1 Select Enable event notification.
- 2 Select an event to use with the text-to-speech and sound file playback feature from Available Events.
- 3 Click Browse to get a notification with a sound file.



**Note** The available file format is WAV.

Select Use text-to-speech to hear the text entered in the text-to-speech box when an event occurs.

- 4 Click on Play to verify that the sound or text is reproduced correctly.

## Uninstalling the software (computer with Windows)

The software can be uninstalled (removed) using the Product Library disc provided with the printer.

**IMPORTANT** On Macintosh computers, the software cannot be uninstalled using the Product Library disc because the printer settings are specified using a PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file.

- 1** Quit all active applications.
- 2** Insert the Product Library disc that came with the printer into the optical drive.
- 3** Following the procedure used to install the driver for printer, click Remove Software. The Remove Software wizard appears.
- 4** Select the software to uninstall.
- 5** Click Uninstall.



**Note** In Windows Vista, the Remove Driver and Assembly screen appears. Select Remove Driver and Driver Assembly and click OK. If KYOCERA Net Viewer or KYOCERA Net Direct Print is installed, a separate uninstallation wizard is launched for each application. Follow the uninstall steps for each app according to the on-screen instructions.

The uninstallation begins.

- 6** When the Uninstall was successful screen appears, click Next.
- 7** Choose whether to restart the computer or not, then click To end.

## Command Center RX

Command Center RX is a tool for checking the operating status of the machine, and changing security, network printing, and advanced network settings online, among other things.

If E-mail settings are defined, it is possible to send an e-mail notification when a job is completed.

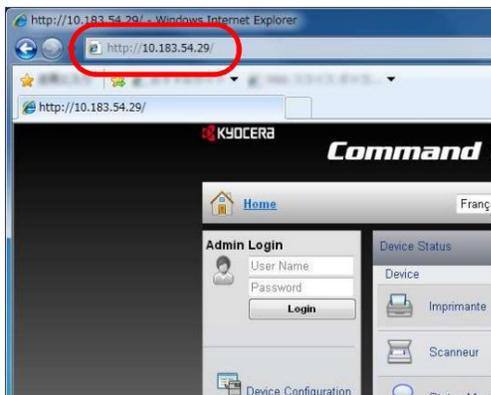


**Note** To change settings in Command Center RX, you must log in as the administrator of the machine. The factory default settings are configured as follows.

User ID: Admin

Access password: Admin

The procedure to access Command Center RX is as follows.



**1** Launch the web browser.

**2** Enter the IP address of the machine in the Address or Location bar.

Eg. `http://10.183.54.29/`

The web page displays basic information about the machine and Command Center RX, as well as the current status.

**3** Select an item in the navigation bar to the left of the screen. The settings must be configured separately depending on the items.

If restrictions have been set for Command Center RX, enter the user name and password to gain access to other pages.

For more information, see Command Center RX User Guide.

## Email settings

Specify SMTP settings to be able to send an e-mail notification when a job is complete.

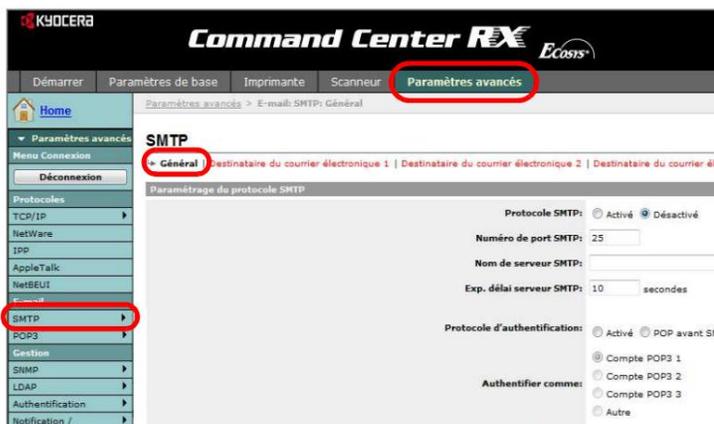
In order to use this function, the machine must be connected to an e-mail server using the SMTP protocol.

Also check the following points:

- Network environment used to connect the machine to the mail server  
A permanent connection via a local network is recommended.
- SMTP Settings  
Use Command Center RX to register the SMTP server IP address or host name.
- If the size of e-mail messages has been limited, it may not be possible to send large messages.

The method for making SMTP settings is described below.

- 1 Click Settings -> Advanced Settings -> SMTP -> General.



- 2 Enter the desired settings in each field.

The parameters to be set in the SMTP settings screen are described below.

Element	Description
Protocole SMTP	This field enables or disables the SMTP protocol. To use the E-mail function, this protocol must be activated.
SMTP Port Number Set the	SMTP port number. Normally use port 25.
SMTP Server Name Enter the	SMTP server IP address or name. The maximum length of the SMTP server name and IP address is 64 characters. If the server name is entered, a DNS server IP address must also be configured.  It is possible to enter this address on the TCP/IP parameters screen.
Exp. SMTP server timeout Set	the timeout in seconds before expiration.
Authentication Protocol Allows	you to enable or disable the SMTP authentication protocol or select POP before SMTP as the protocol. SMTP authentication supports Microsoft Exchange 2000.
Authenticate as	It is possible to select authentication on three POP3 accounts or to choose another account.
Username conn.	If Other is selected for Authentication, the username entered here will be used for SMTP authentication. The maximum username length is 64 characters.
login password	If Other is selected for authentication, the password entered here will be used for authentication. The maximum password length is 64 characters.
SMTP Security	This field enables or disables SMTP security. When this protocol is activated, you must select SSL/TLS or STARTTLS. To enable SMTP security, the SMTP port number must have been changed according to the server settings. Normally, the SMTP ports used are 465 for SSL/TLS and 25 or 587 for STARTTLS.
POP before SMTP timeout	Set the timeout in seconds before timing out when POP has been selected before SMTP as the authentication protocol.

Element	Description
Tester	Allows you to check that the SMTP connection has been established correctly.
Lim. email size	Enter the maximum allowed size for emails in kilobytes. If this value is 0, email size limitation is disabled.
Sender 's address Enter the	e-mail address of the person responsible for the machine, for example administrator of the machine, so that replies or NDRs are sent to that person and not to the machine. The sender address must be entered correctly for SMTP authentication. The maximum length of the sender address is 128 characters.
Signature	Enter the signature. This is free text that will display at the end of the email body. This option is sometimes used for additional printer identification. The maximum signature length is 512 characters.
Restriction domaine	Enter the domain names that will be authorized or refused. The maximum domain name length is 32 characters.

## Dynamic Domain Name System (DDNS)

This printer supports DDNS via DHCP. To use this system, you must first configure the DHCP/BOOTP to Enabled.

Set DDNS to On to use the DDNS service to update the correspondence between host names and IP addresses.

Refer to the Command Center RX User Guide for configuration method.

## Control Panel Lock

Restricts use from the control panel. To use the locked menus, it is necessary to be logged in as a user with administrator rights.

The Control Panel Lock setting is made from Command Center RX. For the configuration method, refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.

The uses restricted by the control panel lock are as follows.

Use	Control panel lock settings				
	Unlocked	Partial lock 1	Partial lock 2	Partial lock 3	Locked
<b>System menu</b>					
Print report	-	-	-	●	●
USB memory	-	-	-	●	●
Counter	-	-	-	●	●
parameters paper	-	-	-	●	●
stop. print	-	-	●	●	●
Network	-	●	●	●	●
Network optional*1	●	●	●	●	●
Device common	-	●	●	●	●
Security*1	●	●	●	●	●
NomUtil/CptaTrav*1	●	●	●	●	●
Adjust/Maint.	-	●	●	●	●
Opt. function*1	●	●	●	●	●
<b>document box</b>					
Personal box.	-	● <sup>*2</sup>	● <sup>*2</sup>	●	●
Job box	-	-	● <sup>*3</sup>	●	●
Using the control panel keys	-	-	-	○ <sup>*4</sup>	○ <sup>*5</sup>

● : It is necessary to log in as a user with administrator rights for use.

—: No restrictions.

\*1: Regardless of the control panel lock setting, it is necessary to be logged in as a user with administrator rights.

●<sup>\*2</sup>: Adding and editing custom box is restricted.

●<sup>\*3</sup>: Job box setting is limited.

○<sup>\*4</sup>: Only [Logout] and use to cancel printing work.

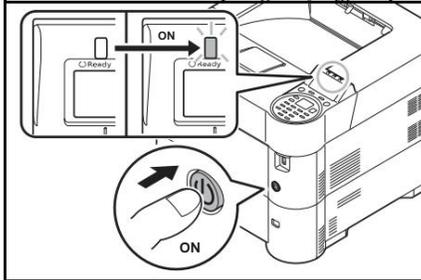
○<sup>\*5</sup>: Only [Logout] and [Cancel] to interrupt the alarm work.



Note Optional Network is displayed only when an optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

## Power on and power off

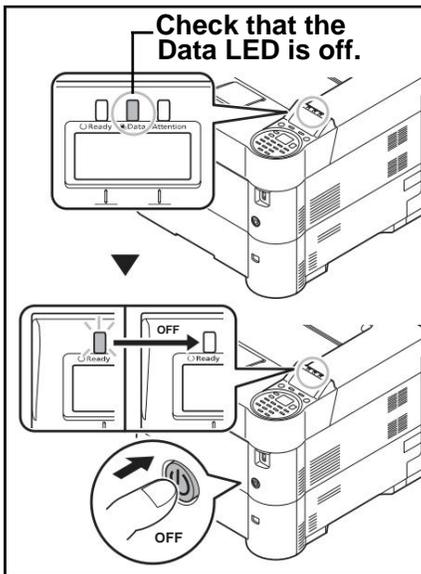
### Power on



1 Press the power switch.

**IMPORTANT** When the machine is turned off, do not turn it back on immediately. Wait at least 5 seconds, then turn the machine back on.

### Mise hors tension



1 Check that the Data LED is off, then press the power switch.

## Energy saving function

### Standby

When the set time (default setting is 1 minute) elapses after the printer is last used, the printer automatically enters sleep mode. The display backlight and lights turn off to minimize power consumption. The machine is in Sleep mode.

There are two sleep modes: Quick Resume and Power Saver. The default setting is Power Saver mode.

### Quick Resume Mode

Resuming from sleep mode is faster than when using Power Saver mode.

The screen turns off when sleep mode is activated and the Ready light flashes.

The machine quickly resumes operation by pressing [OK]. Also, the machine automatically resumes operation and printing when a job is detected.

If print data is received in sleep mode, printing is performed but the screen remains off.

To use the printer, press [OK]. The printer will be ready to use after 15 seconds (FS-2100D/FS-2100DN/FS-4100DN), 20 seconds (FS-4200DN) or 25 seconds (FS-4300DN).

Please note that ambient environmental conditions (e.g. ventilation) may slow machine response time.

For more information on configuration parameters, refer to the Tempora section. Sleep (Sleep Timer) on page 4-94.

### Energy saving mode

This mode reduces power consumption more than Quick Recovery mode and allows separate sleep mode setting for each function.

#### IMPORTANT Caution when configuring power saving mode

- Data stored on the RAM disk is deleted when the machine enters Energy Saver mode.
- The machine will not wake from sleep mode if print data is received from a computer connected with a USB cable (the FS-2100D model will resume operation, however).
- No ID card is recognized in Power Save mode.

To use the printer, press [OK]. The time it takes for the printer to wake up from sleep mode and resume normal operation will be longer than in Quick Resume mode.

For more information on power saving settings, refer to Sleep Level Settings (Sleep Timeout Delay) on page 4-92.

### Stop delay

If the printer is not used during sleep mode, the machine is automatically turned off. The Shutdown Delay is used to set the delay before power down. The factory setting for time before power off is 1 hour.

**IMPORTANT** It is possible to define the stop rule and the stop delay. For details, refer to Shutdown Rule (Shutdown Rule Parameter) on page 4-94 and Tempo. Shutdown (Shutdown Timer Settings) on page 4-95.

### If the printer is not used for a while



**CAUTION** If the printer is not used for a long time (eg overnight), turn it off with the power switch. If the printer will not be used for a longer period (eg vacation), remove the power plug from the socket as a precautionary measure.

**CAUTION** Remove the paper from the trays and place it in its original packaging to protect it from humidity.

## Loading Paper

The following section describes the procedure for loading paper into the tray and MP tray.

### Loading paper in the tray

The standard tray holds up to 500 sheets of A4 or smaller plain paper (80 gsm).

The following paper sizes are supported: 8-1/2 x 14" (Legal), Oficio II, 8-1/2 x 11" (Letter), Executive, Statement, A4, B5, A5, A6, B6, Folio, 216 x 340 mm, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope DL, Oufuku Hagaki, Envelope C5 and Custom.

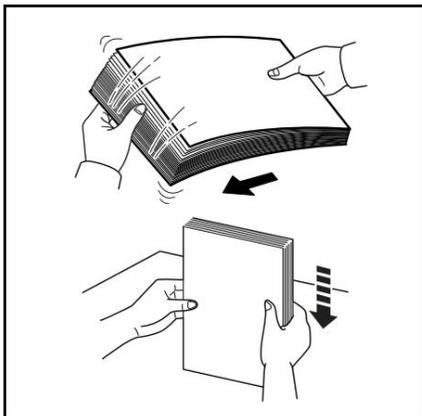
**IMPORTANT** Do not use inkjet printer paper or any other paper with a special surface coating (these papers may cause jams or other problems).

Always specify the media type definition when using media types other than plain paper (such as recycled paper or colored paper). (Refer to Tray (1 to 5) Type (Setting the Tray Paper Type) on page 4-32). The trays can accommodate paper up to 120 gsm.

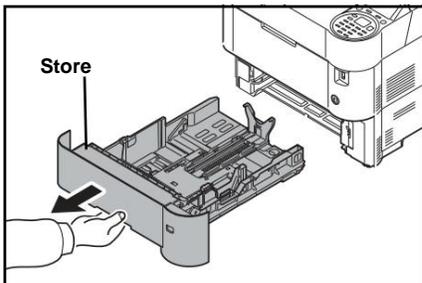
Do not load thick paper weighing more than 120 gsm into the trays. Use the MP tray for paper weighing more than 120 gsm.



Note A6 size can only be used in Tray 1.

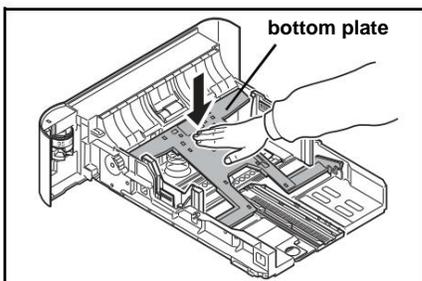


- 1 Fan the media (paper/transparencies), then even the stack on a flat surface to avoid paper jams or skewed prints.

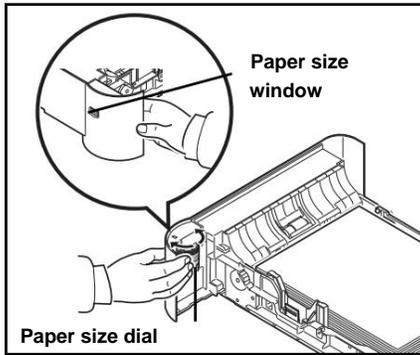


- 2 Pull the tray completely out of the machine.

**IMPORTANT** Make sure the tray is supported and does not fall when removing it from the machine.



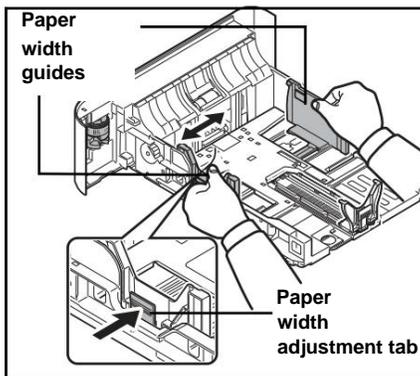
- 3 (FS-2100D/FS-2100DN only) Push the bottom plate down until it clicks.



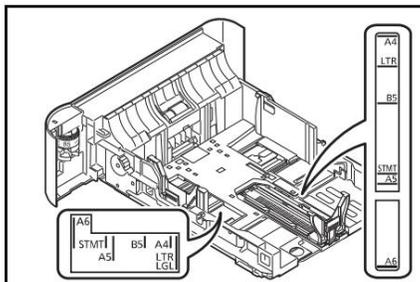
- 4 Turn the paper size dial until the size you want to use appears in the corresponding window.**



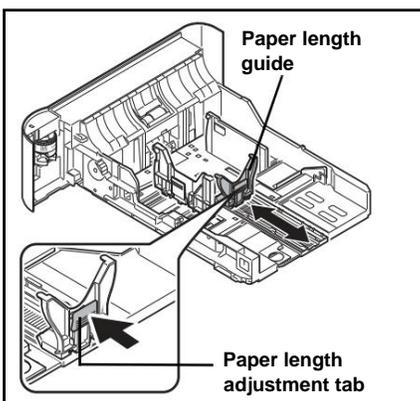
**Note** When the paper size dial indicates Other, the size must be configured from the printer control panel. Refer to Param. tray (1 to 5) (Settings for trays) on page 4-28.



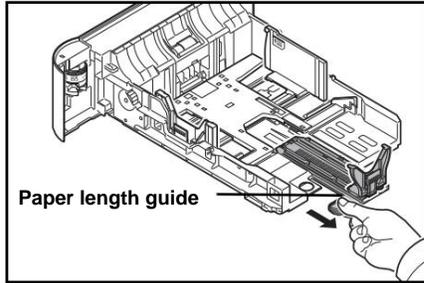
- 5 Adjust the position of the paper width guides on the left and right of the tray. Press the paper width adjustment tab and slide the guides to the desired paper size.**



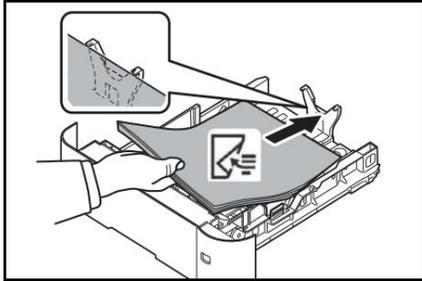
**Note** Paper sizes are indicated on the tray.



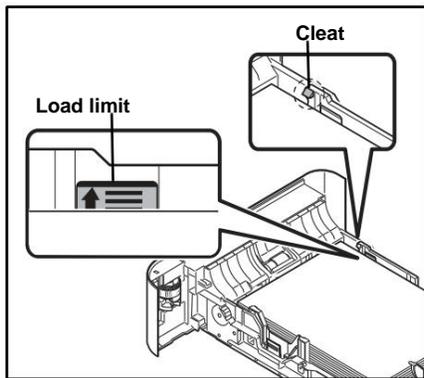
- 6 Adjust the paper length guide to the desired paper size.**



If paper longer than A4 size is used, pull out the paper length guide to the rear.



**7** Load paper into the tray. Make sure the side to be printed on is face down and the paper is not folded, curled, or damaged.



**IMPORTANT** Do not load paper above the limits on the paper width guide.

Before loading the paper, check that it is not curled or folded. Curled or folded paper can cause jams.

Check that the loaded paper does not exceed the loading limit (see the figure on the right).

Place the stack of paper under the tabs (see figure opposite).

Adjust the paper length and width guides according to the paper size. Loading paper without adjusting these guides may cause misfeeds and paper jams.

Check that the paper length and paper width guides are resting on the paper. If they are too far apart, bring them closer to the paper.

**8** Reinsert the magazine into the machine and push it in completely.



**Note** If the machine will not be used for an extended period, protect the paper from moisture by removing it from the trays and placing it in its original packaging.

**9** Select the type of media (plain, recycled, etc.) loaded in the tray. (Refer to Tray (1 to 5) Type (Setting the Tray Paper Type) on page 4-32).

## Loading Paper in the MP (Multi-Purpose) Tray

The MP tray holds up to 100 sheets of A4 or smaller plain paper (80 gsm).

The MP tray can accommodate paper sizes from A4 to A6 and Hagaki and from Legal to Statement, 216 × 340 mm, Monarch Envelope, #10 Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Executive, #9 Envelope, #6 Envelope, ISO B5, Oufuku Hagaki, Oficio II, 16K, Folio, Youkei 2, Youkei 4 and Perso. Be sure to use the MP tray when printing on any special paper.

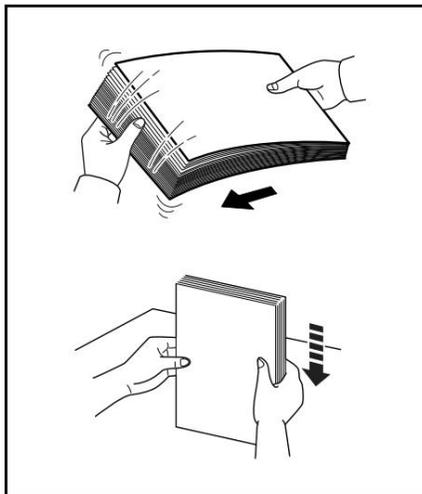
**IMPORTANT** Always specify the media type definition when using media types other than plain paper (such as recycled paper or colored paper). (Refer to Media Type (Setting the paper type for the MP tray) on page 4-27). If using 106 gsm or heavier, set the media type to Heavy.

The capacity of the MP tray is as follows.

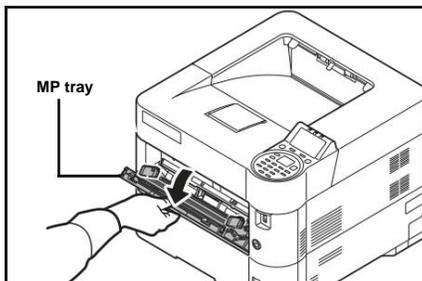
- normal paper A4 or less (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>): 100 sheets
- Hagaki : 1 feuille
- Transparencies: 1 sheet
- DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, #10 Envelope (Commercial #10), Monarch, Youkei 4, Youkei 2: 5 sheets
- Folio: 20 sheets
- Thick paper: 5 sheets



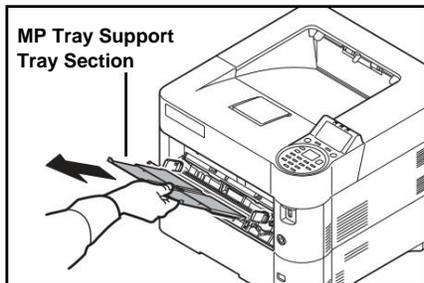
**Note** When using special paper such as transparencies or thick paper, select the media type referring to Media Type (Setting the paper type for the MP tray) on page 4-27.



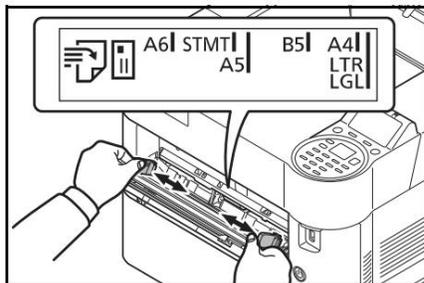
- 1 Fan the media (paper/transparencies), then even the stack on a flat surface to avoid paper jams or skewed prints.



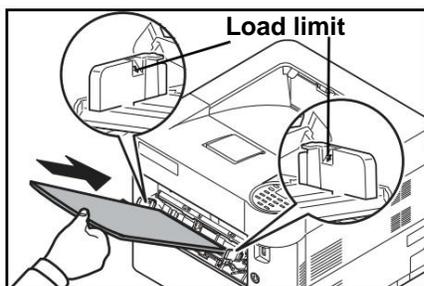
- 2 Pull out the multi-purpose tray until it stops.



**3** Pull out the support tray section from the MP tray.



**4** Adjust the position of the paper guides on the MP tray. Standard paper sizes are marked on the MP tray. For standard sizes, slide the paper width guides to the corresponding mark.



**5** Align the paper with the paper guides and insert it as far possible.

**IMPORTANT** Do not load paper beyond the maximum paper loading marks inside the MP tray.

Keep the side oriented towards the closure of the sprigs.

Curled paper must be straightened before use.

Tighten the top edge if it is curled.

When loading paper in the MP tray, check that there is no paper remaining from a previous job in the tray before loading the paper. If a small amount of paper remains in the MP tray and you wish to add more, first remove the remaining paper from the tray and add it to the new paper before reloading the paper into the tray.

**6** Configure the MP tray paper size from the control panel printer control. Refer to the Config section. bypass (MP tray settings) on page 4-26.

## Loading envelopes

You can load 5 envelopes in the MP tray.

The envelope sizes accepted are as follows.

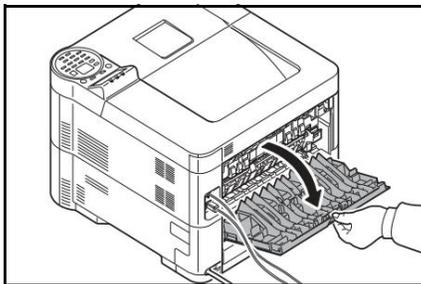
Envelope accepted	Format
Youkei 2	114 × 162 (mm)
Youkei 4	105 × 235 (mm)
Monarch	3 7/8" × 7 1/2"
Envelope #10 (Commercial #10)	4 1/8" × 9 1/2"
Envelope DL	110 × 220 (mm)
C5 Envelope	162 × 229 (mm)
Executive	7 1/4" × 10 1/2"
Envelope #9 (Commercial #9)	3 7/8" × 8 7/8"
Envelope #6 (Commercial #6 3/4)	3 5/8" × 6 1/2"

## Switching to Envelope Mode (FS-2100D/FS-2100DN)

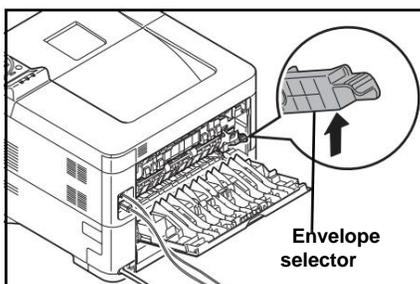
To print on an envelope, follow the procedure below to switch to envelope mode.



**Note** When printing on envelopes is complete, return the envelope selector to its original (down) position.



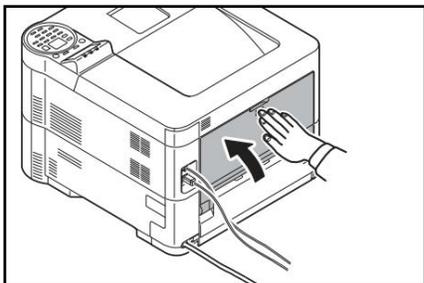
1 Open the back cover.



2 To print on an envelope, lift the envelope selector.

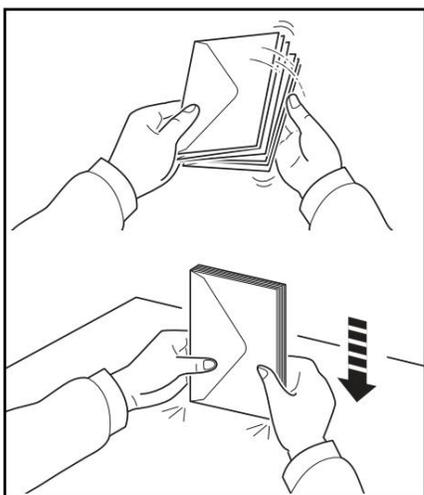


**CAUTION** The fuser inside the printer is hot. Do not touch it with your hands, at the risk of burning yourself.

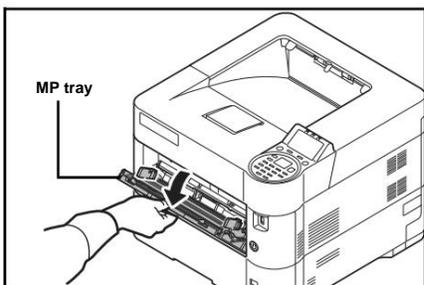


**3 Close the back cover.**

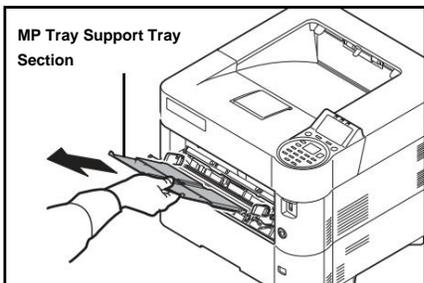
### Loading envelopes in the MP tray



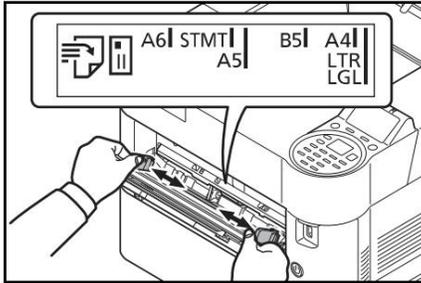
**1 Fan the envelopes, then even the stack on a flat surface to avoid envelope jams or skewed prints.**



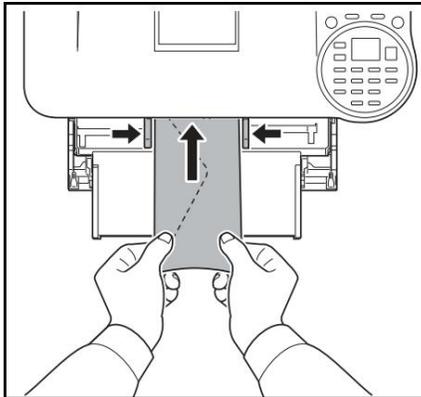
**2 Pull out the multi-purpose tray until it stops.**



**3 Pull out the support tray section from the MP tray.**



**4** Adjust the position of the paper width guides on the MP tray.



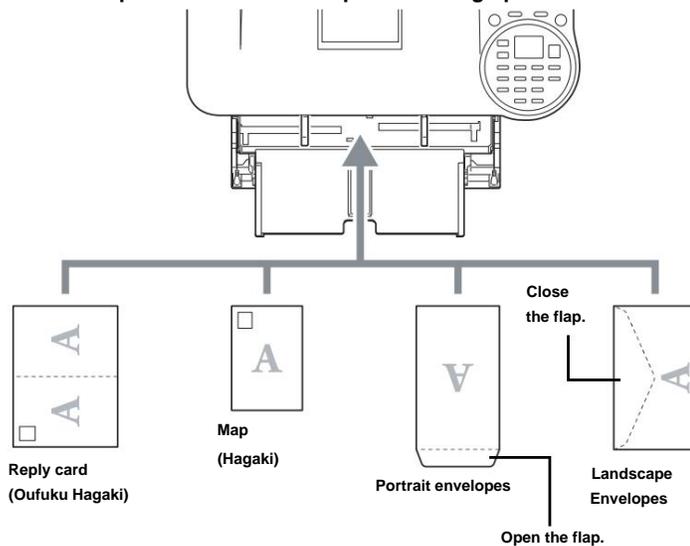
**5** Align the paper with the paper guides and insert it as far as possible.

**6** For portrait envelopes, open the flap. Insert the envelope completely along the width guides keeping the side to be printed facing up and the edge with the flap facing you.

For landscape format envelopes, close the flap. Insert the envelope completely along the width guides keeping the side to be printed facing up and the edge with the flap on the left.

**When loading envelopes or card in the MP tray**

Load the envelope with the side to be printed facing up.



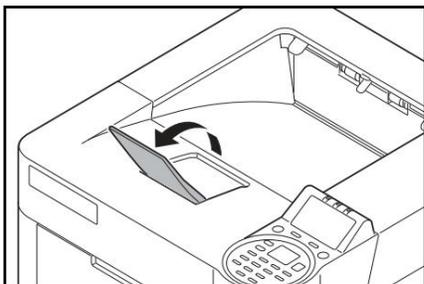
**Note** Use unfolded reply cards (Oufuku Hagaki).

**IMPORTANT** How envelopes are loaded (orientation and print side) depends on the type of envelope. Check the direction of loading because any mistake may result in printing in the wrong direction or on the wrong side.



**Note** When loading envelopes in the MP tray, select the envelope type according to Media Type (Setting the paper type for the MP tray) on page 4-27.

## Paper stopper



When using paper larger than A4/Letter, open the paper stopper shown in the figure.

## 3 Impression

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

Printing from applications .....	3-2
Canceling a print job.....	3-3 Printer
driver print settings screen .....	3-4 Saving a Page
Size . .....	3- 6 Printer Driver
Help.....	3-7 Printing
Functions.....	3 -8

## Printing from applications

This section provides basic instructions for printing documents. The instructions are based on the interface elements as they appear in Windows 7. To print the document from applications, install the printer driver on the computer using the supplied Product Library.



**Note** Refer to Installing the Software on page 2-7.

Follow the steps below to print documents from an application.

- 1 Create a document in an application.
- 2 Click File and select Print from Application. The Print dialog box appears.
- 3 Click  next to the Name field and select this machine in the list.
- 4 Indicate the number of prints desired in the Number of copies box. Enter a number from 1 to 999.

To print multiple documents, select Collate to print them one at a time in page order.

- 5 Click Properties. The Properties dialog box appears.

- 6 Select the General tab and click the Print Size button to select the print size.

To print on special papers, such as thick paper or transparencies, click the Media Type menu and select the media type.

- 7 Click Source and select the paper source.



**Note** If Auto from Source is on, paper is automatically fed from the paper source containing the correct paper size and type. To print on special papers, such as envelopes or thick paper, place the paper in the MP tray and select MP tray.

- 8 Select the paper orientation, Portrait or Landscape, depending on the orientation of the document.

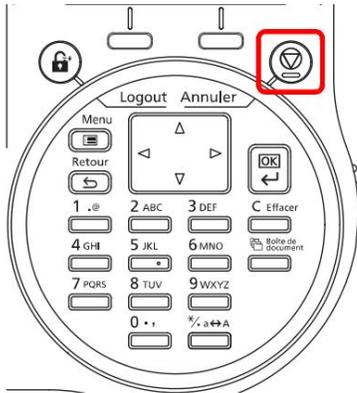
If the Rotated 180° option is activated, the document will be printed after being rotated 180°.

- 9 Click OK to return to the Print dialog box.

- 10 Click OK to start printing.



## Canceling a print job



**1** When the printer displays Processing, press [Cancel].

The Canceled Job List is displayed to show the list of current print jobs.

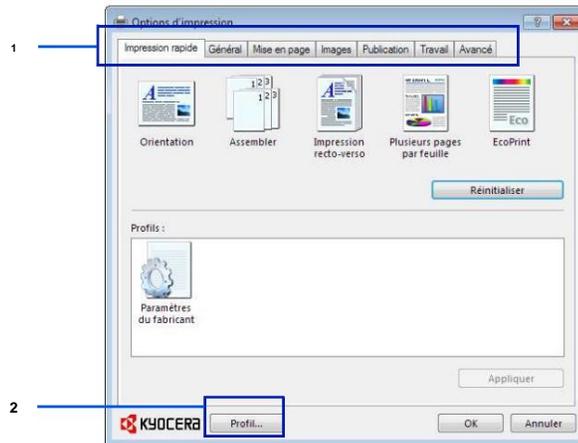
**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to display the desired job, then press sure OK].

When the message Work. will be cancelled. Are you sure ? is displayed, press [Yes] ([Left Select]) to cancel the job or press [No] ([Right Select]) to cancel this operation and continue printing.

When canceling a job, Canceling... is displayed on the screen and printing stops after the page being printed has been ejected.

## Printer driver print settings screen

The printer driver's print settings screen allows you to configure many print-related settings. For more information, see Printer Driver User Guide on the Product Library disc.



N°	Description
1	<p><b>Quick print</b> Provides icons that can be used to easily configure common functions. Each click on an icon displays an image resembling the print results and applies the settings.</p>  <p><b>General</b> This tab groups the basic functions that are often used. You can configure the paper size, media type, destination, and duplex printing.</p> <p><b>Layout</b> This tab allows you to configure settings for various print layouts, including booklet printing, combine mode, poster printing, and scaling.</p> <p><b>Images</b> This tab allows you to configure the parameters related to the quality and grayscale adjustment of the print results.</p> <p><b>Publication</b> This tab is used to create covers and inserts for print jobs and to place inserts between sheets of OHP film.</p> <p><b>Work</b> This tab is used to configure settings for saving print data from the computer to the machine. Frequently used documents and other data can be saved on the machine for easy printing later. Since stored documents can be printed directly from the machine, this function is also convenient for printing a document that should not be seen by other people.</p> <p><b>Advanced</b> This tab is used to configure settings for adding text pages or watermarks to print data.</p>

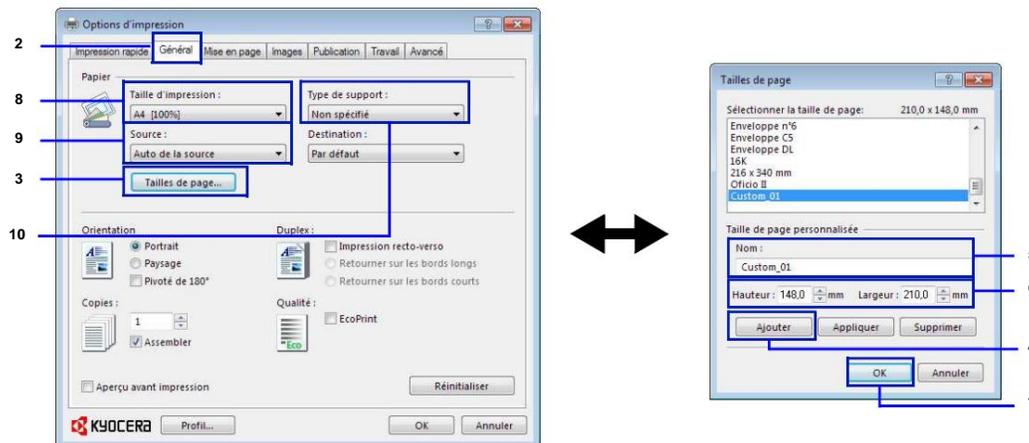
	N° Description
2	<b>Profile</b> <b>Printer driver settings can be saved in a profile. Saved profiles can be recalled at any time; also, it is convenient to save frequently used settings.</b>

---

## Saving a page size

When a card or envelope is loaded in the MP tray, set the paper size and type, and then register the paper size on the General tab of the printer driver's print settings screen.

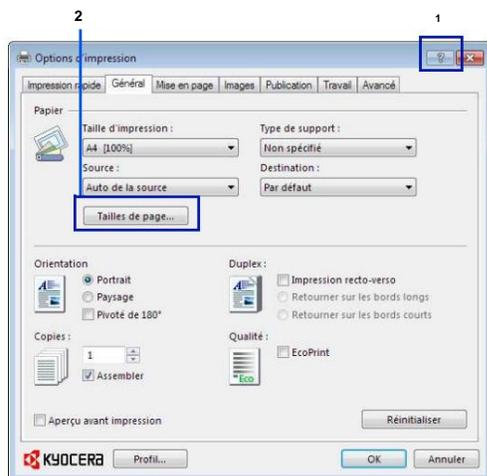
Once saved, the paper size can be selected from the Page Sizes menu.



- 1 Display the print settings screen.
- 2 Click on the General tab.
- 3 Click Page Sizes... to save the size.
- 4 Click Add.
- 5 Enter the name of the paper.
- 6 Enter the paper size.
- 7 Click OK.
- 8 Select the page size (name) registered in steps 4 to 7.
- 9 Select MP Tray.
- 10 Select Card or Envelope.

## Printer Driver Help

The printer driver includes help. To learn more about print settings, display the printer driver's print settings screen and display Help using one of the methods explained below.



**1** Click ? at the top right of the screen.

**2** Click the item for which to obtain more information.

## Changing printer driver default settings (Windows 7)

Default printer driver settings can be changed. By selecting frequently used settings, it is possible to skip steps during printing.

The procedure is as follows.

**1** Click Start, then Devices and Printers.

**2** Right-click the machine's printer driver icon, then click the Printer Driver Properties menu.

**3** Click Printing Preferences on the General tab.

**4** Select default settings and click OK.

For settings, refer to Printer Driver Print Settings Screen on page 3-4.

## Print functions

This section describes useful functions that can be configured with the printer driver. For more information, see [Printer Driver User Guide](#).

### Half speed mode (printer driver settings)

Half speed mode cuts the rated print speed in half. When selected, the toner adheres better when printing on small, heavy, or textured paper. In addition, it is possible to select the half speed mode to feed the paper evenly and avoid paper jams. This printing mode can be quieter.



Note Half speed mode applies to all media types except Transparency and Vellum.

### Line thinning ((printer driver settings)

Line thinning reduces the pen width of lines used for barcodes and line art. Drawing values controlled by an application are not changed.

Element	Description
Off (default setting)	Line thinning is not applied.
Barcodes	This setting reduces the pen width value for vertical and horizontal lines. It improves barcode readability.
Fine lines	This setting reduces the pen width value for vertical, horizontal, and diagonal lines.
All	This setting reduces the pen width by a value of 1 for vertical, horizontal, and diagonal lines used in barcodes or line art.



Note Thinning is available when PCL XL is selected in the PDL Settings dialog box. When GDI compatible mode is selected in the PDL Settings dialog box, line thinning is not available.

### Fix fine line by device

Allows pen width correction per device. This feature is only available on supported modes.

### Custom box (optional feature)

The custom box is a component box that can be created in the document box to store data for later use.

It is possible to create or delete a custom box and data can be exchanged in different ways. To use a Custom Box, an optional solid-state drive must be installed in the printer.

For details on using the Custom Box, refer to [Custom Box](#) on page 5-4.

### Job Box (optional feature)

The job box temporarily or temporarily holds print data for use with job options (including private print, quick copy, and proof before print which will be discussed later).

Four individual Job Boxes correspond to these job options and are already provided in the Document Box. These Job Boxes cannot be created or deleted by a user.

For details on using Job Box, refer to [Job Box](#) on page 5-24.

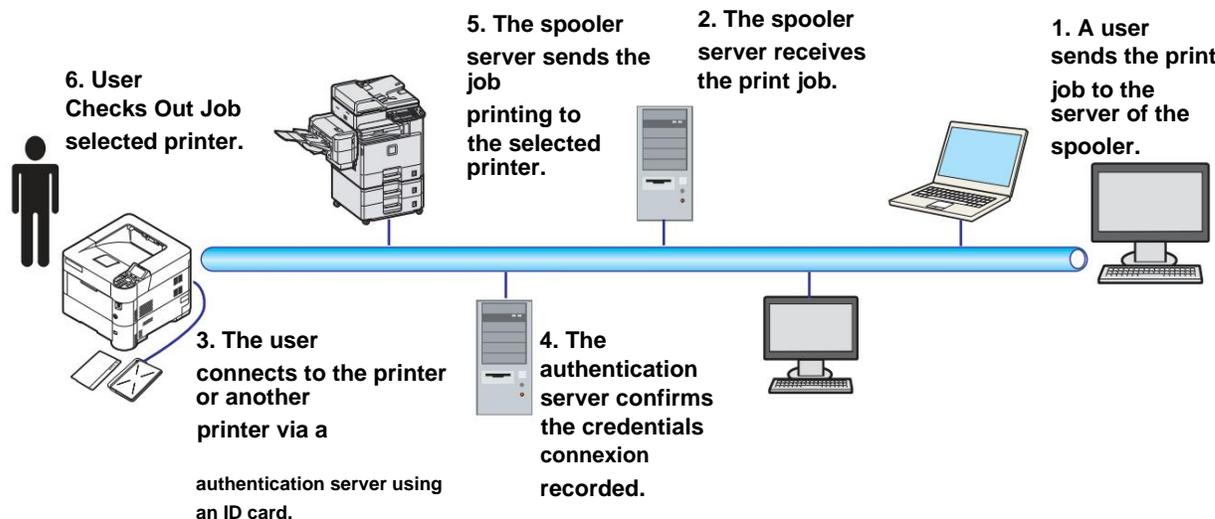
## Enabling ThinPrint (optional feature)

This printer can select whether or not to communicate with ThinPrint.

For details on usage, refer to Opt. (Optional Application Settings) on page 4-136.

## Secure pull printing (optional feature)

Secure Pull Printing is a printing feature that allows the user to pull the print job to a selected printer after spooling the job to a server. To use this function, the following system environments are required.



Authentication server: KYOCERA Net Policy Manager (optional software) must be installed.

ID card and ID card reader: used to register and authenticate a user.

The spooler server: sends the print job to a selected printer after user login.

For details, contact the dealer or service representative.



## 4 Control panel

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

Screen.....	4-2
Touches .....	4-4
Using the menu selection system .....	4-7
Setting a selection menu fashion .....	4-9
Print Report... ..	4-10
USB memory (USB memory selection) .....	4-17
Counter (Counter value display) .....	4-25
Paper Settings .....	4-26
Param. print .....	4-40
Network (Network Settings) .....	4-56
Optional Network (Optional Network Settings).....	4-64
Device Common (Selection/Setting of Common Devices) .....	4-77
Security (Security Function Settings) .....	4-100
UserName/JobAccount (Parameter User Login/Job Accounting Setting) ..	4-113
Adjust/Maint. (Selection/parameter Adjustment/Maintenance) .....	4-133
Opt. (Optional app settings) .....	4-136

## Screen

Messages indicating the status of various printer operations are displayed on the screen.

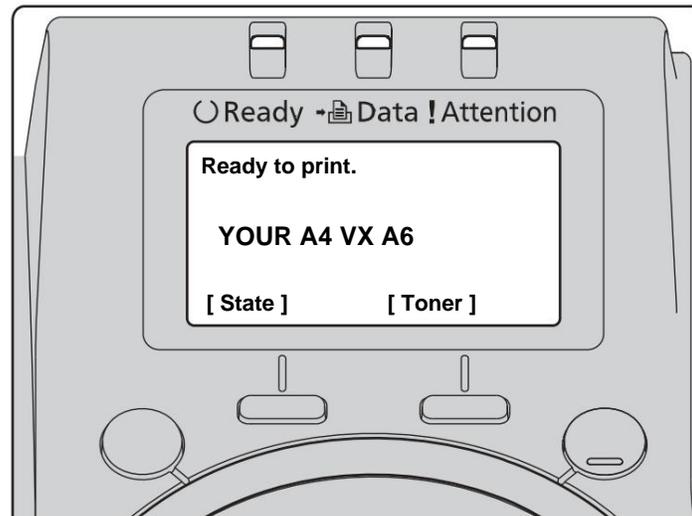
### Status information

Message	Signification
Please wait.	The printer is warming up and is not ready. When the printer is first powered on, this message remains displayed for a few minutes.
Please wait. Paper loading.	The paper in the tray is moved to a position where paper can be loaded. This message sometimes appears for a short time when the tray is returned to the home position, for example, after adding paper.  Note This message does not appear on the FS-2100D and FS-2100DN models.
Please wait. Adding toner...	A toner replenishment is in progress. This message may appear when continuously printing a large number of pages that require a large amount of toner, such as photographs, etc.
Ready to print.	The machine is ready to print.
Treatment	The machine receives data to be printed. This message is also displayed when the printer reads an SD/SDHC memory card, USB memory, SSD or RAM disk.
Cancelation...	Jobs received by the printer are being canceled. To cancel a job, see <a href="#">Canceling a Print Job</a> on page 4-4.

### Error Codes

For more information on error codes and printer errors that require user attention, see [Error Messages](#) on page 8-6.

## Display LEDs



### Ready, Data, and Attention LEDs

The following lights come on during normal printing and when the printer requires operator intervention. Each light corresponds to different states, each with its own meaning.

Seeing	Description
 ○ Ready	<p>Turn signal. Error you can fix. For more information, refer to Troubleshooting on page 8-1.</p> <p>Or, the printer is in auto sleep mode. This mode is disabled when the printer receives a print job. After a warm-up time, the printer goes online. For details on auto sleep mode, see Tempora. Sleep (Sleep Timer) on page 4-94.</p> <p>Alight. Printer ready and online. The printer prints the data it receives.            Off. Printer offline because printing is manually or automatically stopped due to an error condition. Data can be received, but will not be printed. For more information, see Error Messages on page 8-6 if printing is stopped automatically when an error condition occurs.</p>
 → Data	<p>Turn signal. Data being received.</p> <p>Alight. Specifies the processing of data received before printing begins, or indicates access to the optional solid-state drive or SD/SDHC memory card.</p>
 ! Attention	<p>Turn signal. If Wait Please. is displayed, the printer is warming up. It may also indicate that the printer cannot print (eg no paper in the tray). Check the displayed message and take the necessary action. For more information, refer to Error Messages on page 8-6.</p> <p>Alight. The printer cannot print because of an error. Check the displayed message and take the necessary action. For more information, refer to Error Messages on page 8-6.</p>

## Touches

The buttons on the control panel are used to configure the use of the printer. Some of them have a secondary function.

### Cancel key



This key is used to perform the following operations:

- Cancel a print job.
- Stop an alarm ringing.

### Canceling a print job

#### 1 When the printer displays Processing, press [Cancel].

The Canceled Job List is displayed to show the list of current print jobs.

#### 2 Press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to display the desired job, then press sure OK].

When the message Work. will be cancelled. Are you sure ? is displayed, press [Yes] ([Left Select]) to cancel the job or press [No] ([Right Select]) to cancel this operation and continue printing.

When canceling a job, Canceling... is displayed on the screen and printing stops after the page being printed has been ejected.

## Touche Logout



- If user control is set, be sure to log out by pressing [Logout] when operations are completed.

### Touch Menu

Menu



- The [Menu] key allows you to access the menu system in order to modify the configuration and the environment printing from the printer.

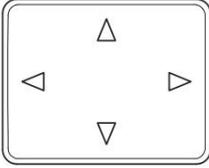
### Return key

Retour



- Cancels the currently displayed menu setting and returns to the menu of the previous step.

### Arrow keys



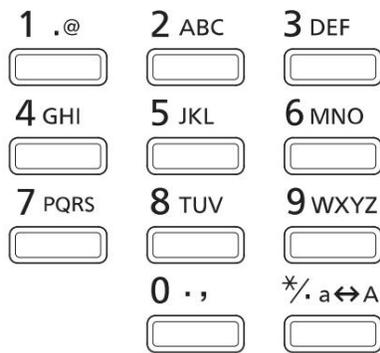
- The four arrow keys are used in the menu system to navigate to an item or enter information. numerical values.

### OK key



- Finalize setting numeric values and other selections.

### Number keys



- To enter numbers and symbols.

### Delete key



- Clears entered numbers and characters.

### Document box key



- Press this key to use the document box. For more information, refer to the section Box of handout on page 5-1.

## Left selection key/Right selection key



- These keys work only when the corresponding key tabs are displayed on the screen. Pressing the key executes the function displayed on the screen.

Pressing the key executes the function displayed on the screen.

Eg. :

When the menu below is displayed, pressing [Left Select] ([Yes]) prints the selected file. Pressing [Right Select] ([No]) interrupts printing and returns to the menu of the previous step.

To print.  
Are you sure ?

[ Yes ]

[ Non ]

- These keys work only when the paper jam message is displayed on the screen. A help message appears to help clear the jam in the correct location.

## Using the menu selection system

### Menu selection system

This section describes how to use the menu selection system.

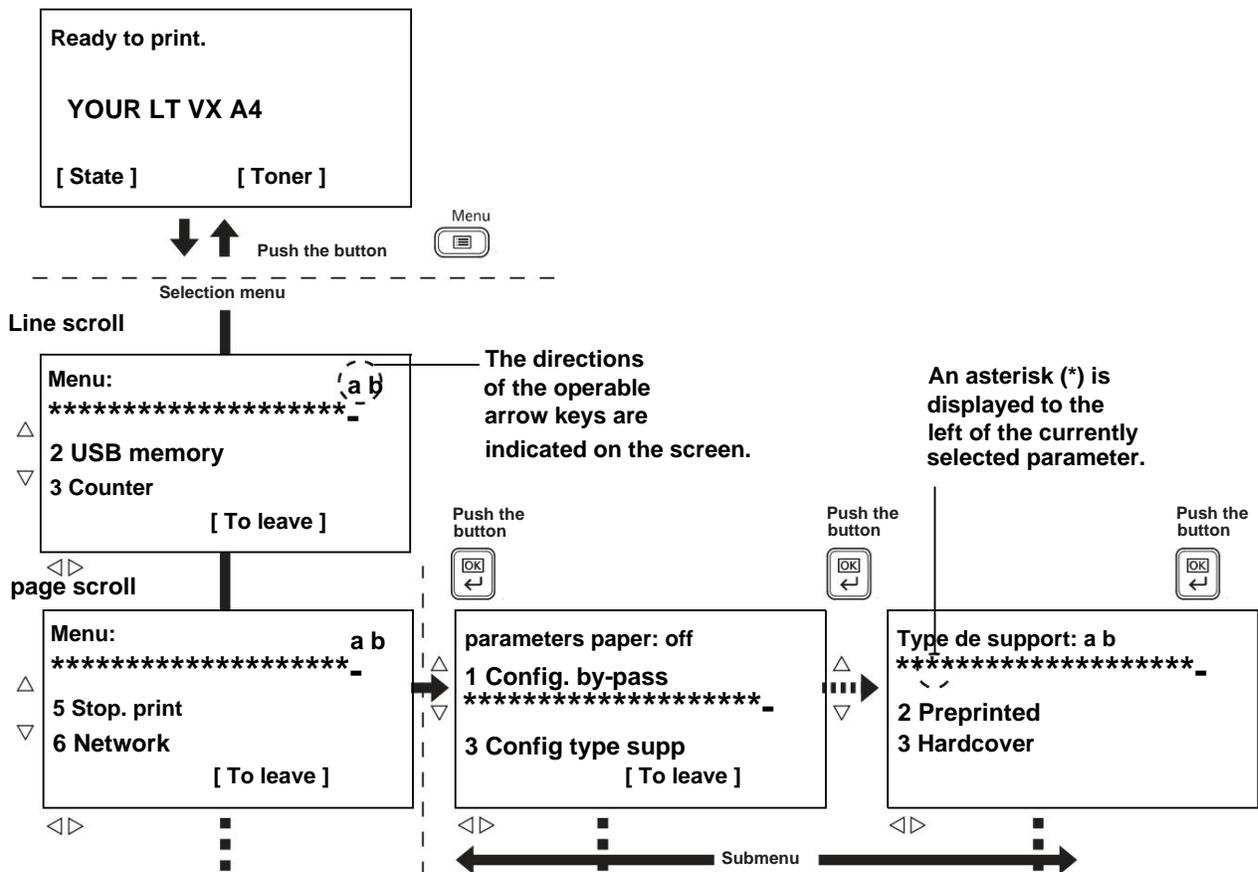
The [Menu] button on the control panel allows you to access the menu to configure printer settings as needed. Settings can be made when Ready to print., Please wait. or Processing is displayed on the printer screen.

 Note Settings made from the application software and printer driver override those made from the control panel.

### Access to mode selection menu

Press [Menu] when Ready to Print status. appears on the printer screen.

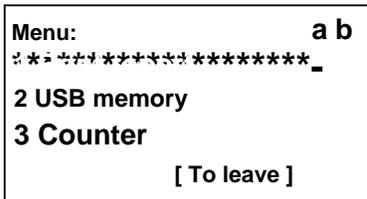
The mode selection menu is displayed.



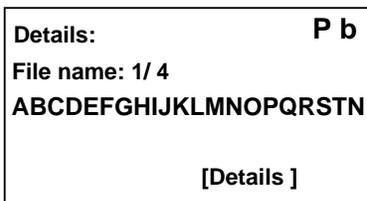
 Note USB memory is displayed only if USB memory is installed. Network is only displayed on network compatible models.

### Selecting a menu

The mode selection menu is hierarchical. Press  $\bar{y}$ ,  $\bar{y}$ ,  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to display the desired menu.



- If [a ] is displayed at the top right of the screen, you can use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to scroll up or down through menu options one line at a time, or  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to scroll through menu options one page at a time.



- If [P ] is displayed at the top right of the screen, you can use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to move between pages.

To return to the upper level menu, press [Back].

### Setting a menu



Select the desired menu and press [OK]. You can now choose options from the menu. Press  $\bar{y}$ ,  $\bar{y}$ ,  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select or enter the desired setting, then press [OK] to confirm your selection.

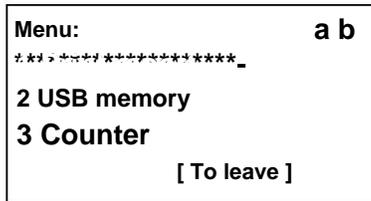
If you choose from a list of parameters, an asterisk (\*) is displayed to the left of the currently selected parameter.

### Canceling a menu selection

If you press [Menu] inside a menu, the Ready to print status appears on the screen again.

## Setting a mode selection menu

This section describes the procedures used for each menu item in the mode selection menu.



**1** When the printer displays Ready to print, please wait. and Treatment, press [Menu]. The mode selection menu is displayed.

**2** The selection changes each time you press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .

- Print report...4-10 • USB memory...4-17
- Counter...4-25 • Param. Paper...4-26 • Paper Setting. print....4-40
- Network...4-56
- Optional Network...4-64
- Periph. Common...4-77 • Security...4-100
- UserName/ JobAccount...4-113 • Adjust/ Maint. ...4-133 • Opt....4-136



Note Optional Network is displayed only when an optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

## Print report

Prints a report. The options available in the Print Report menu are:

- Menu plan (printing the menu plan)...4-10
- Status Page (Printing a Printer Status Page)...4-12
- Font List (Printing a list of printer fonts)...4-14
- File list. RAM (Printing a list of RAM disk files)...4-15
- File list. SSD (Printing a list of SSD files)...4-15
- ListSDcard File (Printing a list of files on an SD/SDHC memory card)...4-16



- 1 Press [Menu].
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print Report.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Print Report menu displays a list of report types that can be printed. Note that the report types shown may vary depending on the options installed in the printer.

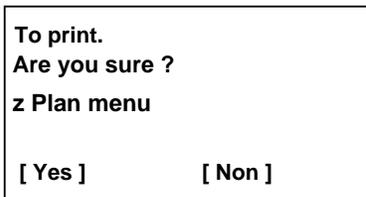
## Menu plan (printing of the menu plan)

The printer prints a complete list of the menu selection system, i.e. the menu map.

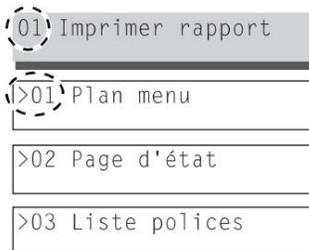
- 1 From the Report Print menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Menu Map.
- 2 Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



Note When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].



- 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Accepted. is displayed and the printer prints the menu map. Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Print Report menu without printing the menu map.

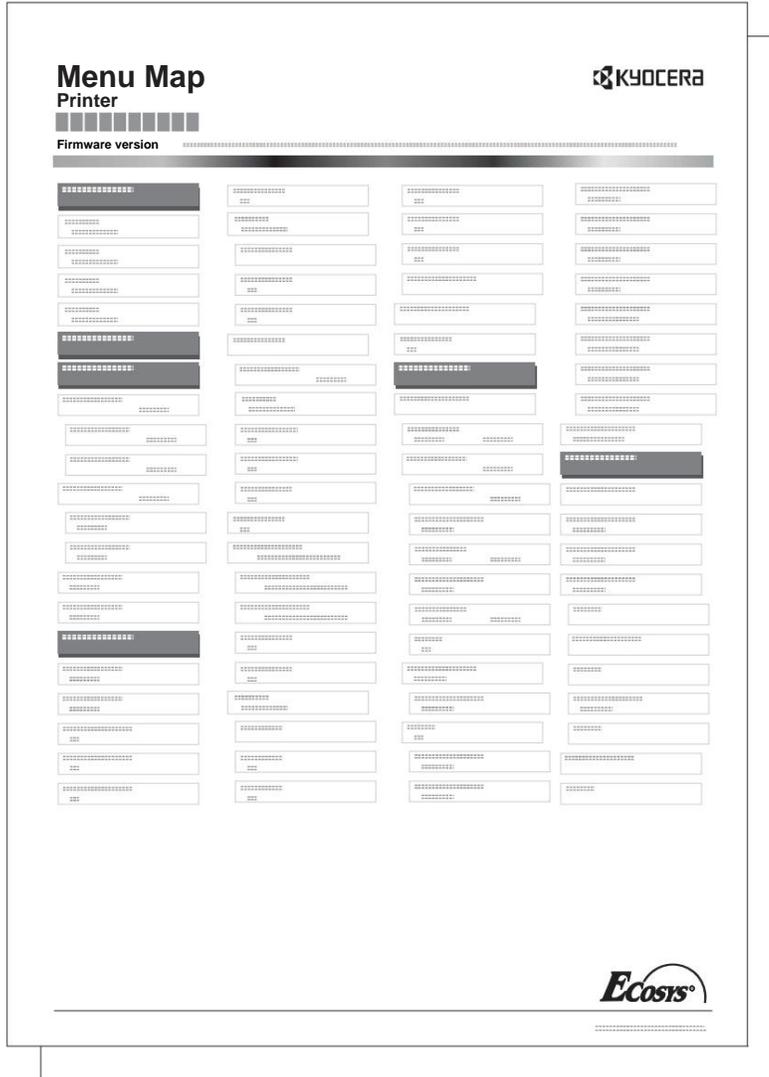


Note Menu numbers are shown on the printed menu map. You can use the numeric keys to enter the menu number and display the required parameters.

Eg. : Display of the print menu of the menu plane

- 1 Press [Menu].
- 2 Press [1] on the numeric keys. The menu Print Report is displayed.
- 3 Press [1] on the numeric keys. A confirmation message appears.

### Example menu structure



## Status Page (Printing a Printer Status Page)

Printing a status page allows you to check the current printer status and optional settings.

**1** From the Print Report menu, push  $\bar{\Delta}$  or  $\bar{\nabla}$  to select Status Page.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



Note When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].

**3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Accepted. appears and the printer prints a status page.

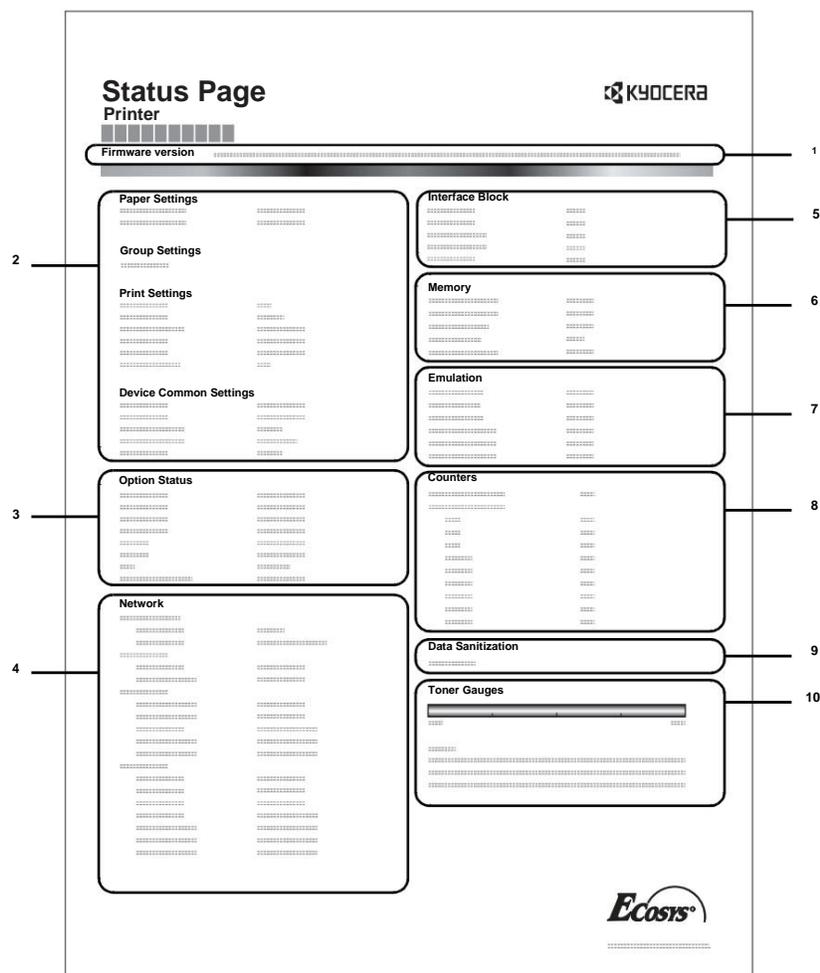
Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Print Report menu without printing the status page.

To print.  
Are you sure ?  
z Status page

[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]

### Description of the configuration page

The numbers that appear in the illustration below refer to the items explained below. The displayed items and values vary depending on the printer's firmware version.



**1 Firmware version**

This item indicates the printer firmware version and revision date.

**2 Printer Settings Information**

This item specifies various printer settings for hardware components:

- Size and type of paper contained in the MP tray
- Size and type of paper in the tray
- Copies
- EcoPrint
- Mode KIR
- Resolution
- MP Tray Priority
- Standby level
- Sleep delay
- Stop delay
- Paper feed timeout delay
- Bac MF vide

**3 Options Installed**

This item shows the options installed in the printer:

- Paper feeder
- Bac G.C.
- SD/SDHC memory card
- SSD
- Card Authentication Kit (B)
- Data Security Kit (E)
- UG-33

**4 Network Status**

This item shows the IP address, subnet mask address, and default gateway address for the network interface card in the printer.



**Note Appears only on network-enabled models.**

**5 Informations Interface**

This information indicates the blocking status of items including the USB memory slot and the USB interface.

When connecting through a network interface card (NIC), the hang status is displayed for an optional interface.

**6 Memory**

This element provides the following information:

- Standard memory in the printer
- Status of optional memory slot (in MB)
- Total memory in printer - Current status of

**RAM disk 7 Emulation**

This item shows all available printer emulations. KPDL (AUTO) or PCL 6 emulation is the default. The emulations are as follows:

- PCL 6



## File List RAM (Printing a list of RAM disk files)

Allows you to print a list of RAM disk files.

**IMPORTANT** Appears when RAM disk mode is set to On.

**1** In the Print Report menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select File List. RAM.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



**Note** When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].

<p>To print. Are you sure ? from List of fich. RAM</p> <p>[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]</p>
--

**3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message

Accepted. appears and the printer prints a list of files on the RAM disk.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Print Report menu without printing the RAM disk file list.

## File List SSD (Printing a list of SSD files)

Allows you to print a list of files on the SSD.

**IMPORTANT** It is only displayed when the printer has an optional SSD (HD-6) installed and properly formatted.

**1** In the Print Report menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select File List. SSD.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



**Note** When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].

<p>To print. Are you sure ? from List of fich. SSD</p> <p>[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]</p>
--

**3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message

Accepted. appears and the printer prints a list of files on the SSD.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Print Report menu without printing the SSD file list.

## ListFich SD card (Printing a list of files on a memory card SD/SDHC)

Allows you to print a list of files on the SD/SDHC memory card.

**IMPORTANT** The message only appears when the SD/SDHC memory card is installed in the printer and properly formatted.

**1** In the Print Report menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select SD Card File List.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



Note When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].

**3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). Accepted. is displayed and the printer prints a list of files on the SD card/SDHC.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Print Report menu without printing the SD/SDHC card file list.

To print. Are you sure ? from ListFich carteSD  [ Yes ]                      [ Non ]
--

## USB memory (USB memory selection)

Specifies settings for removing USB memory and printing USB memory contents.

The USB memory menu appears automatically when the USB memory is installed.

**IMPORTANT** This message only appears when USB Host Lock and USB Storage Lock are set to Unlock. For more information, see Interf Block Conf (External Interface Blocking Setting) on page 4-108.

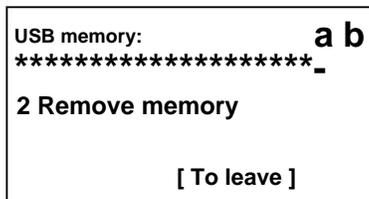
The options available in the USB Memory menu are as follows:

- Print File (Printing and Checking Files in USB Memory)...4-17
  - Displaying the File List...4-17
  - Print File (Printing the selected file)...4-18
- Print Function Settings...4-19
  - Verto verso (configuration of l'impression Vertical verso)...4-19
  - EcoPrint (Selecting EcoPrint Mode)...4-20
  - File name input. (entering a file name)...4-20
  - Job Completion Notice (Setting for notification when jobs are completed)...4-21
  - Encrypted PDF (PDF password input)...4-22
  - TIFF/JPEG format (Adjusting the print size of TIFF/JPEG file)...4-22
  - XPS Fit To Page (Adjusting the XPS file print size)...4-23
  - Details (Displays the details of the selected file)...4-23
- Remove Memory (Removing USB Memory)...4-24

**1** Press [Menu].

**2** Press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select USB Memory.

**3** Press [OK]. The USB Memory menu displays a list of shares available.



## Print File (Printing and Checking Files in USB Memory)

This function displays a list of files and folders in the USB memory. It is possible to print the selected file. You can also see the details of the selected file or folder.

The options available in the Print File menu are as follows:

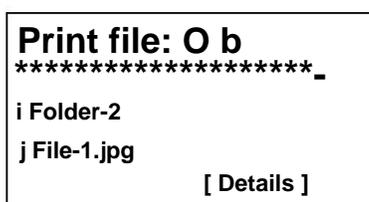
- Displaying the File List...4-17
- Print File (Printing the selected file)...4-18

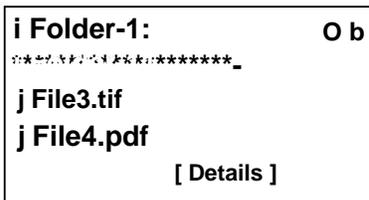
### File list display

**1** In the USB Memory menu, press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select Print file.

**2** Press [OK]. The file list displays a list of files and USB memory folders.

If there are more than 4 files or folders, press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  repeatedly to scroll the list up or down.





Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select a folder, then press [OK].

Folders and files in the selected folder are displayed.

**IMPORTANT** Print file only displays PDF, TIFF, JPEG and XPG files from the USB memory. It is possible to display up to 3 levels of folders. Depending on the capacity of the USB memory and the number of files, the list may take some time to appear.

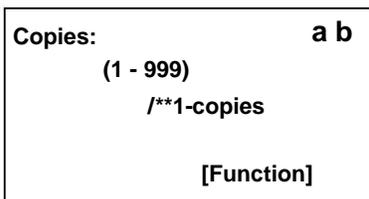
### Print File (Print selected file)

You can use this option to specify printing of files from USB memory.

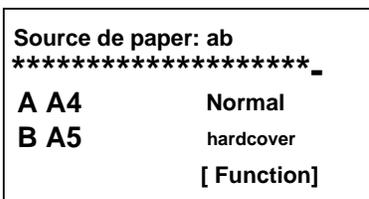
- 1 Use the procedure described in Print File (Printing and Checking Files in USB Memory) on page 4-17 to display a list of files in the folder containing the file you want to print.
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the file to print.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Copies menu screen is displayed.



**Note** When job accounting is set but user login is not set, the screen for entering job accounting information is displayed. Enter the Account ID and press [OK].



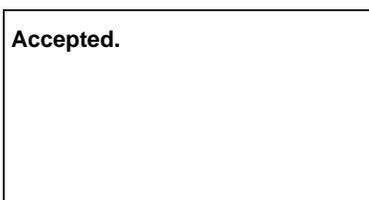
- 4 To print 2 or more copies, use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the number of copies to print.



- 5 Press [OK]. The Paper Source menu screen is displayed.



**Note** It is possible to press [Function] ([right select]) to change the print settings. For more information, refer to Print Function Settings on page 4-19.



- 6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the magazine containing the paper to use.
- 7 Press [OK]. The message Accepted. displays and printing commence.

## Print function settings

When printing, the print settings can be changed.

The options available in Print Function Settings are as follows:

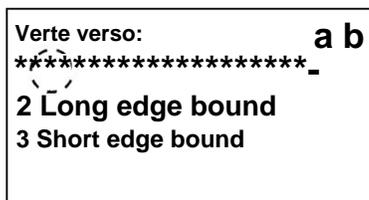
- Verto verso (configuration of l'impression recto verso)...4-19
- EcoPrint (Selecting the EcoPrint mode)...4-20
- File name entry. (entering a file name)...4-20
- Job Completion Notice (setting for notification when jobs are completed)...4-21
- Encrypted PDF (enter PDF password)...4-22
- TIFF/JPEG format (Adjusting the print size of TIFF/JPEG file)...4-22
- XPS Fit To Page (Adjusting the XPS file print size)...4-23

### Verto verso (configuration of l'impression verso)

Set duplex printing. For more information, refer to Duplex (Setting up duplex printing) on page 4-42.



- 1 From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.



- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Duplex.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Duplex screen appears and displays the list of available duplex printing modes.

- 4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Simplex printing mode. desired back.

The following binding modes scroll across the screen:

Disabled (default)

Hardcover long edge

Short edge bound

Selecting Off disables duplex printing.

- 5 Press [OK]. Duplex printing mode is set and the Function menu is displayed again.

## EcoPrint (EcoPrint mode selection)

Set EcoPrint mode. For more information, refer to EcoPrint (Selecting EcoPrint Mode) on page 4-50.



**1** From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EcoPrint.

**3** Press [OK]. The EcoPrint screen appears.



**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EcoPrint mode.

**5** Press [OK]. EcoPrint mode is set and the Function menu appears again.

## File name input. (entering a file name)

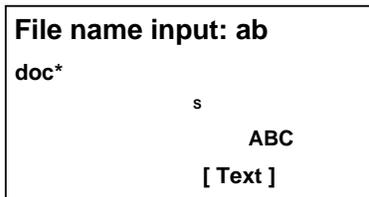
Enter the file name. The entered file name is displayed as Job Name in Job Status and Job Log.



**1** From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select File Name Entry.

**3** Press [OK]. The File Name Entry screen appears. is displayed.

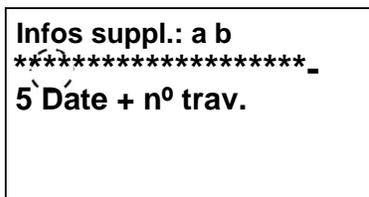


**4** Enter the file name using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**5** Press [OK]. The Additional Info screen is displayed.



**6 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the information that can be set for the file name.**

The following settings are available.

- None (No additional information is added).
- Date (To add the date).
- Job no. (to add the job number).
- Job no. + date (to add job number and date).
- Date + work no. (to add date and job number).

**7 Press [OK]. Save file name. The Function menu appears again.**

### Job Completion Notice (setting for notification when jobs are completed)

The job completion notification is sent by email.



**Note** To send e-mail from this machine, set the SMTP and POP3 settings to On. For more information, refer to Protocol Detail (Detailed settings for network protocol) on page 4-62.

It is necessary to register an e-mail server. For server setup method, refer to Command Center RX on page 2-17.

Function: a b  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
**2 EcoPrint**  
 3 File name entry.

**1 From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.**

**2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select JobFinish Notice.**

**3 Press [OK]. The Job Completion Notice screen appears.**

**End of work notice: ab**  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
**2 Enabled**

**4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On.**

**5 Press [OK]. The Address Entry screen appears.**

**Input address: ab**  
 \*  
  
ABC  
[ Text ]

**6 Enter the address to receive the notification.**



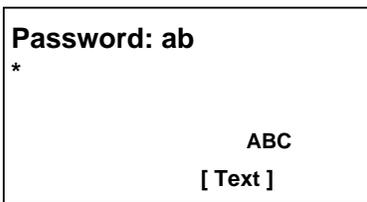
**Note** Up to 128 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

When user login administration is enabled, the address of the logged in user is entered.

- 7 Press [OK]. Save address. The Function menu appears again.**

## Encrypted PDF (enter PDF password)

The password of a PDF file can be entered.



- 1 From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.**

- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Encrypted PDF.**

- 3 Press [OK]. The Password input screen appears.**

- 4 Enter the password for the PDF file.**



**Note** Up to 256 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

- 5 Press [OK] to enter the password and return to the menu Function.**

## TIFF/JPEG format (Adjusting the print size of TIFF/JPEG file)

Use this setting to select the printing method used when TIFF or JPEG files are printed directly.



- 1 From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.**

- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select TIFF/JPEG Format.**

- 3 Press [OK]. The TIFF/JPEG Format screen appears.**

The options available in TIFF/JPEG Size are: • Paper Size (default)

Images are resized to match the paper size when printed.

• Picture resolution

Image files are printed at the resolution specified in the resolution information. Images without resolution information are printed using the Paper Size setting.

- Print resolution.

Images are printed using a 1 to 1 correspondence between pixels in the image file and printed dots. For example, the print size of a 600 x 300 pixel image file is 1 inch x 1/2 inch.

**4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the TIFF/JPEG Format mode is activated.**

**5 Press [OK]. The TIFF/JPEG Format setting is set and the Function menu is displayed again.**



**Note** Images are automatically rotated during printing to achieve the best match between the appearance of the image file and the paper used for printing.

### XPS Fit To Page (Adjusting the XPS file print size)

Select On for this setting to enlarge or reduce XPS files according to the print area during printing.

```
Function:                               a b
*****_
2 EcoPrint
3 File name entry.
```

```
XPS fit to page: ab
*****_
2 Enabled
```

**1 From the Copies menu or the Paper Source menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.**

**2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select XPS Fit To Page.**

**3 Press [OK]. The XPS Fit To Page screen appears.**

**4 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the XPS adjustment mode to the page.**

**5 Press [OK]. XPS fit to page setting is set and the Function menu is displayed again.**

### Details (Displays details of the selected file)

Use this option to view detailed information about files and folders in USB memory.

**1 Use the procedure described in Print File (Printing and checking USB memory files) on page 4-17 to display a list of files or folders you want to check.**

**2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the folder or file to be check.**



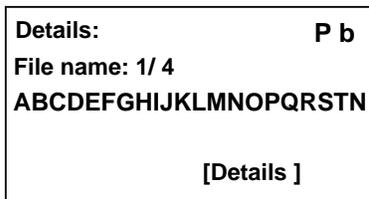
### 3 Press [Detail] ([Right Select]). The Details screen is displayed.

If you selected a file, 4 Details screens are available. Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to move from one screen to another.

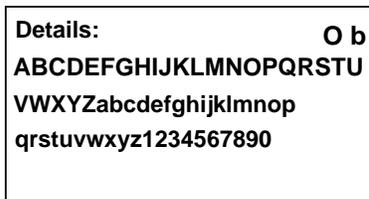


If you have selected a folder, 2 Details screens are available. Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to move from one screen to another.

Press [OK] when the file or folder details are displayed to return to the Print File menu.



If the full name for File name or Folder name does not fit on one line, press [Detail] ([Right Select]) to switch to 3-line name display. If the name is longer than 3 lines, it can be scrolled by pressing  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .



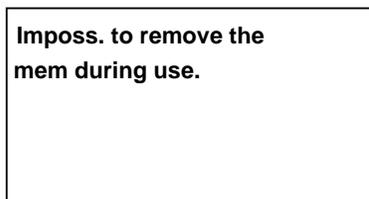
Press [OK] twice when file or folder details are displayed to return to the Print File menu.

## Remove Memory (Removing USB Memory)

Allows you to remove a USB memory device.

**1** In the USB Memory menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Remove memory.

**2** Press [OK]. The printer is now ready for USB memory removal and the mode selection menu screen is displayed.



**IMPORTANT** If the screen opposite is displayed, the USB memory is still in use. Wait for the corresponding job (eg printing from USB memory) to complete, then repeat the Remove Memory procedure.

## Counter (Display of counter value)

The following procedure displays only the total number of printed pages. This number cannot be changed.

Counter:	O b
Total	17000
A4	2000
B5	1000

**1** Press [Menu].

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Counter.

**3** Press [OK]. The total number of pages to print and the number of pages per paper size are displayed.

Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to display the number of pages printed for other paper sizes.

## Param paper

Use the following procedure to set the paper size for the MP tray and paper feed trays.

The options available in Paper Settings are as follows:

- Config. bypass (MP tray settings)...4-26
- Param. tray (1 to 5) (Settings for trays)...4-28
- Param. GC tray (parameters for optional bulk feeder)...4-33
- Media Type Setup (setting the paper type)...4-35
- Reset. reg. paper (Resets custom settings)...4-39

**1** Press [Menu].

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. paper.

**3** Press [OK]. The Settings menu. paper displays a list of available options.

```

parameters paper: off
*****_
2 Param. magasin 1
3 Config type supp
      [ To leave ]
  
```

## config. bypass (MP tray settings)

To print correctly on the paper supplied from the MP tray, use the following procedure to set the paper size and media type.



**Note** Using paper that does not match the size currently set for the MP tray may cause a paper jam.

The options available in the Config. by-pass are as follows:

- Paper Size (Setting the paper size for the MP tray)...4-26
- Media Type (Setting the paper type for the MP tray)...4-27

## Paper Size (Paper Size Setting for MP Tray)

You can use this procedure to set the size of paper that can be supplied from the MP tray. The default is Letter in the US and Canada and A4 in other countries.

For details on the paper sizes available in the MP tray, refer to Paper on page A-13.

**1** In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Config. bypass.

**2** Press [OK]. The Setup menu screen. bypass is displayed.

```

Config. by-pass: a b
*****_
2 Media type
      [ To leave ]
  
```

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Size.

```

Format paper : from
4 Envelope C5
5 Executive
*****_
  \  /

```

4 Press [OK]. The Paper Size screen displays the list of paper sizes that can be supplied from the MP tray.

The available paper sizes are: Envelop. Monarch

```

Envelope #10
Envelope DL
C5 Envelope
Executive
Letter
Legal
A4
B5
A5
A6
B6
Envelope #9
Envelope #6
ISO B5
Lost
Hagaki
Oufuku Hagaki
Office II
216x340mm
16K
Statement
Folio
Youkei 2
Youkei 4

```

5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper size.

6 Press [OK]. The paper size for the MP tray is set and the setup menu bypass is displayed again.

### Media Type (Paper Type Setting for MP Tray)

You can use this procedure to set the type of paper that can be supplied from the MP tray. The default setting is NORMAL.

For details on the types of paper that can be loaded in the MP tray, refer to Paper on page A-13.

```

Config. by-pass: a b
de support*****- 2 Type

[ To leave ]

```

1 In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Config. bypass.

2 Press [OK]. The Setup menu screen. bypass is displayed.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Size.



**4 Press [OK].** The Media Type screen displays the list of media types that can be supplied from the MP tray.

The available media types are:

Normal  
 Transparent  
 Pre-printed  
 Labels  
 hardcover  
 recycled  
 The machine  
 Rough  
 On your mind  
 Color  
 Perforated  
 Envelope  
 Map  
 Thick  
 High quality  
 CUSTOM 1 to 8

**5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$**  to select the desired media type.

**6 Press [OK].** The media type for the MP tray is set and the setup menu bypass is displayed again.

## Param. tray (1 to 5) (Settings for trays)

To print correctly on the paper supplied from the trays, use the following procedure to set the paper size and media type.

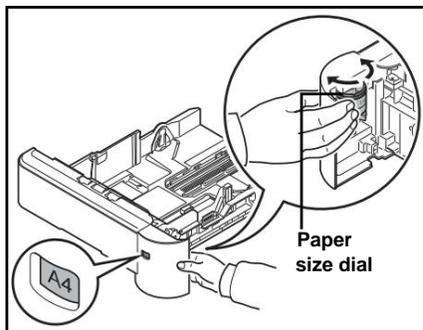
The options available in the Param. store (1 to 5) are as follows:

- Tray Size (1 to 5) (Setting the paper size of the tray)...4-28
- Custom Paper Size...4-29
- Tray Type (1 to 5) (Setting the paper type of the tray)...4-32

### Tray Size (1 to 5) (Setting the paper size of the tray)

To set the standard A5, A4, B5, Letter, and Legal sizes of the paper tray, load the paper and turn the paper size dial until the size of paper you want to use appears in the small window. To load a paper size that is not standard (sizes other than A5, A4, B5, Letter, Legal and A6 (paper tray)) in a paper tray, see the custom paper sizes listed on page 4 -29.

If the optional paper feeder PF-320 is installed, use the same procedure to load paper into the paper feeder trays.



**1 Pull the trays out of the printer and set the paper size to using the paper size dial.**

- Adjust the paper guides in the tray according to the size of the paper to be used for printing and load the paper in the tray.

## Custom paper size

If you are using non-standard size paper, load it and set the paper size dial to Other (see Loading Paper on page 2-24).

To set a custom paper size, the following operations are required.

- Selecting the Format Dial Setting...4-29
- Setting the paper size from the control panel...4-29
- Setting up a custom paper size...4-31

### Selecting the format dial setting

- Pull the trays out of the printer and adjust the size dial of the paper on Other. For more information, see step 1 of Tray Size (1 to 5) (Setting the paper size of the tray) on page 4-28.
- Adjust the paper guides in the tray according to the size of the paper to be used for printing and load the paper in the tray.

### Setting the paper size from the control panel

Use the control panel to set the size of paper loaded in the printer tray. This menu appears if the size dial for the tray is set to Other.



Note When Custom is selected, the paper size can be entered. For details, refer to Setting a Custom Paper Size on page 4-31.

```

Param. magasin 1: ab
*****_
2 Other paper

[ To leave ]

```

```

Other paper: ab
*****_
  \ /
5 Legal
6 A4

```

- In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the paper tray assigned to Other on the size dial.
- Press [OK]. The Param. store # is displayed.  
# indicates the number of the tray installed in the printer (1 to 5).

- Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Other Paper.
- Press [OK]. The Alternate Paper screen displays a list of paper sizes that can be used in the tray.

The available paper sizes are as follows:

- Envelop. Monarch (#2)
- Envelope #10 (#2)
- Envelope DL (# 3)
- C5 Envelope
- Executive
- Letter
- Legal
- A4
- B5
- A5
- A6 (# 1)

B6 (# 3)

Envelope #9 (#2)

Envelope #6 (#2)

ISO B5

Lost

Oufuku Hagaki (# 3)

Office II

216x340mm

16K

Statement

Folio

Youkei 2 (#2)

Youkei 4 (#2)

(#1): Tray 1 for FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN.

(#2): Only when the optional paper feeder PF-320 is installed.

(#3): Tray 1 except for FS-2100D and FS-2100DN.

**5** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper size.



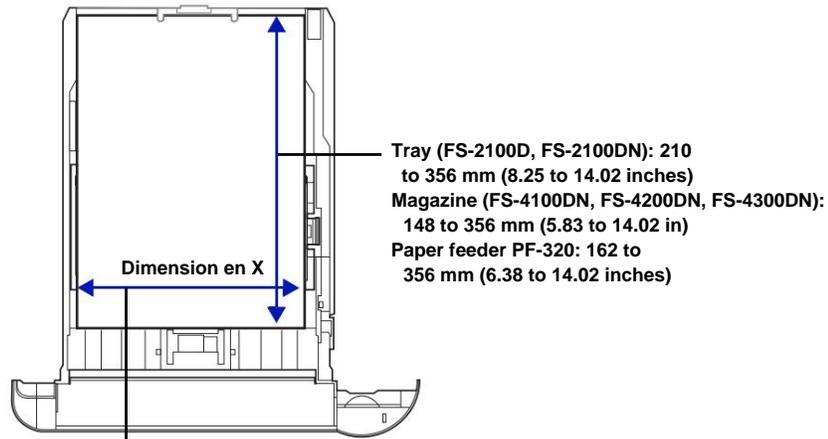
**Note** When Custom is selected, the paper size can be entered. For details, refer to Setting a Custom Paper Size on page 4-31.

**6** Press [OK]. The paper size for the tray is set and the Param. store # is displayed again.

If Custom was selected in step 4, use the following procedure to specify the length and width of the paper.

### Setting up a custom paper size

In the procedure below, select the units to use to enter the custom paper size, and then enter the width and length of the paper. As shown in the figure, enter the Y and X values for the paper size using the chosen units.



Magazine (FS-2100D, FS-2100DN):  
 140 to 216 mm (5.5 to 8.5 in)  
 Magasin (FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN, FS-4300DN) :  
 105 to 216 mm (4.13 to 8.5 in)  
 PF-320 Paper Feeder:  
 92–216 mm (3.62–8.5 in)

```
Param. magasin 1: ab
*****_
2 Other paper
3 Form. Pap. lost
  [ To leave ]
```

- 1 In the Param. store #, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Form. dad. personal. # indicates the number of the tray installed in the printer (1 to 5).

```
Form. pap. perso: a b
*****_
2 Size input(Y)
3 Size input(X)
  [ To leave ]
```

- 2 Press [OK]. The Forms menu. dad. personal is displayed.

```
Measure: a b
*****_
  2 mm
```

- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Measure.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Measurement menu is displayed.

- 5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the units of the format of the paper, and then press [OK]. The paper size input unit is set and the Form menu. dad. personal is displayed again.

- 6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Size Entry(Y).

```

Input format(Y): ab
(5.83 - 14.02)
/14.02-"

```

**7** Press [OK]. The Size Entry(Y) menu screen is displayed.

**8** Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the length of the paper.

The range of paper lengths you can set for each tray is as follows:

Magazine (FS-2100D, FS-2100DN):  
210–356 mm (8.25–14.02 in)

- Tray (FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN, FS-4300DN): 148 to 356 mm (5.83 to 14.02 inches)
- Paper feeder PF-320: 162 to 356 mm (6.38 to 14.02 inches)

**9** Press [OK]. The entered paper length is set and the Form menu. dad. personal is displayed again.

**10** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Size Entry(X).

**11** Press [OK]. The Size Entry(X) menu screen is displayed.

```

Input format(X): ab
(4.13 - 8.50)
/*8.50-"

```

**12** Use the numeric keys or  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the width of the paper.

The range of paper widths you can set for each tray is as follows:

- Tray (FS-2100D, FS-2100DN): 140 to 216 mm (5.5 to 8.5 inches)
- Tray (FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN, FS-4300DN): 105 to 216 mm (4.13 to 8.5 inches)
- PF-320 paper feeder:  
92–216 mm (3.62–8.5 in)

**13** Press [OK]. The entered paper width is set and the Form menu. dad. personal is displayed again.

**14** Pressing [Exit] ([Right Select]) returns to the Ready screen to be printed.

## Tray Type (1 to 5) (Setting the paper type of the tray)

Assigning a paper type (plain, recycled, etc.) to a tray then allows this type to be selected in the printer driver. The default paper type is Plain for all trays.

If the optional paper feeder PF-320 is installed, use the same procedure to set the tray paper type.

For details on the types of paper available in a tray, refer to Paper Specifications on page A-13.

**1** In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the tray to be defined.

**2** Press [OK]. The Param. store # is displayed.

# indicates the number of the tray installed in the printer (1 to 5).

```

Param. magasin 1: ab
*****_
2 Other paper

[ To leave ]

```



3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Media Type.

4 Press [OK]. The Media Type screen displays the list of media types that can be used with the selected tray.

The available media types are:

Normal  
Pre-printed  
hardcover  
recycled  
Rough  
On your mind  
Color  
Perforated  
Envelope (#1)  
High quality  
CUSTOM 1 to 8

(#1): Only when optional paper feeder PF-320 is installed.

5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired media type.

6 Press [OK]. The paper type for the tray is set and the Param. store # is displayed again.

## Param. GC tray (parameters for optional bulk feeder)

To print correctly on the paper supplied by the optional bulk feeder, use the following procedure to set the paper size and media type.



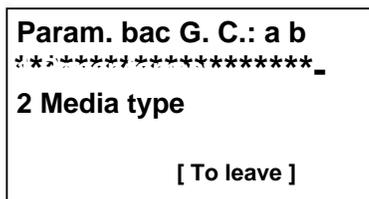
Note Param. GC tray is displayed only when the optional bulk feeder is installed on the printer.

The options available in the Param. GC tray are as follows:

- Paper Size (Paper Size Setting for Optional Bulk Feeder)...4-33
- Media Type (Paper type setting for optional bulk feeder)...4-34

### Paper size (Paper size setting for optional bulk feeder)

You can use this procedure to set the size of paper that can be fed from the bulk feeder.



1 In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Settings. GC tray.

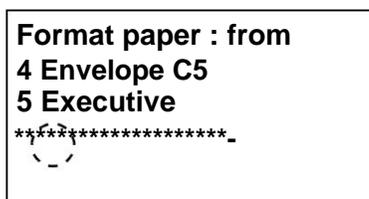
2 Press [OK]. The Param. GC tray is displayed.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Size.

4 Press [OK]. The Paper Size screen displays the list of paper sizes that can be supplied from the MP tray.

The available paper sizes are as follows:

Envelop. Monarch  
Envelope #10  
Envelope DL



C5 Envelope  
 Executive  
 Letter  
 A4  
 B5  
 A5  
 A6  
 B6  
 Envelope #9  
 Envelope #6  
 ISO B5  
 Lost  
 Hagaki  
 Oufuku Hagaki  
 16K  
 Statement  
 Youkei 2  
 Youkei 4

5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper size.

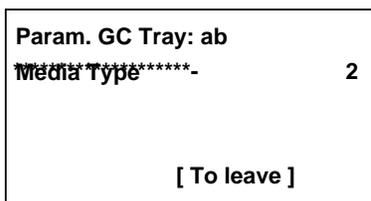
6 Press [OK]. The paper size for the bulk feeder is defined and the Param. GC tray is displayed again.

## Media type (Paper type setting for optional bulk feeder)

This procedure can be used to set the type of paper that can be fed from the bulk feeder.

1 In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Settings. GC tray.

2 Press [OK]. The Param. GC tray is displayed.



3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Media Type.

4 Press [OK]. The Media Type screen displays the list of media types that can be supplied by the Bulk Feeder.

The available media types are:

Normal  
 Transparent  
 Pre-printed Labels

hardcover

recycled

The machine

Rough

On your mind

Color

Perforated

Envelope

Map  
 Thick  
 High quality  
 CUSTOM 1 to 8

5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired media type.

6 Press [OK]. The media type for the bulk loader is defined and the Param. GC tray is displayed again.

## Media Type Setup (setting the paper type)

You can set the paper thickness by selecting a paper weight. This allows you to set the paper thickness for each type of media that can be used on the printer. For custom paper registered in the printer (up to 8), you can specify the paper thickness and duplex printing permission. (For the procedure for registering custom paper sizes, refer to Setting a Custom Paper Size on page 4-31).

For normal settings, refer to Adjusting the Paper Thickness on page 4-35. For custom paper settings, refer to Custom Paper Settings on page 4-36.

The options available in the Device Type Setup menu are as follows:

- Adjusting the Paper Thickness...4-35
- Custom Paper Settings...4-36

## Adjusting the paper thickness

You can set the paper thickness by selecting a paper weight.

The weights available are as follows:

- Very thick
- Thick 3
- Thick 2
- Thick 1
- Normal 3
- Normal 2
- Normal 1
- End

By default, the paper used is Normal 2 type. When using paper other than normal paper, you must change the weight by consulting the table below to obtain the best possible print quality depending on the type of paper. paper.



Note Depending on the type of paper, the toner may not adhere properly to the paper. To solve this problem, select half speed mode from the printer driver. For more information, see Half Speed Mode (printer driver settings) on page 3-8.

Type of support	Paper weight	Type of support	Paper weight
Normal	Normal 2	On your mind	Normal 3
Transparent	Very thick	Color	Normal 3
Pre-printed	Normal 2	Perforated	Normal 2
Labels	Thick 1	Envelope	Thick 3
hardcover	Normal 3	Map	Thick 3
recycled	Normal 2	Thick	Thick 3

Type of support	Paper weight	Type of support	Paper weight
The machine	End	High quality	Normal 2
Rough	Normal 3	CUSTOM 1 to 8	Normal 2

Use the procedure below to set the paper weight.

(For the procedure for setting custom paper weights (CUSTOM 1 to 8), refer to Custom Paper Settings on page 4-36).

```

Config type supp: a b
*****_
2 Transparent
3 Preprinted
      [ To leave ]

```

```

Normal: a b
*****_
      [ To leave ]

```

```

Épaisseur supp .: ab
4 Thick 1
5 Normal 3
*****_

```

**1** In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Extra Type Config.

**2** Press [OK]. The Add. Type Setup screen displays the list of media types that can be used with the printer.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the media type for which you want to set the weight.

**4** Press [OK]. A menu appears for the selected media.

**5** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Extra Thickness.

**6** Press [OK]. The Extra Thickness screen displays the list of weights that can be used with the printer.

**7** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper weight.

**8** Press [OK]. The paper weight is set and the Media Type Setup screen appears.

### Custom paper settings

This setting specifies the weight of the selected custom paper, whether duplex printing is allowed, and the name registration to display.

Use the procedure below to set the custom paper weight.

**1** In the Param. Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Media Type Setup.

```

Config type supp: a b
*****_
2 Transparent
3 Preprinted
      [ To leave ]

```

**2** Press [OK]. The Add. Type Setup screen displays the list of media types that can be used with the printer.

```

LOST 1:                               a b
*****_
2 verso
3 Name entry
      [ To leave ]

```

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the custom paper (CUSTOM 1 to 8) for which to set the weight.

**4** Press [OK]. A menu appears for the selected media.

```

Épaisseur supp.: ab
1 Thick 1
2 Normal 3
*****_
  - -

```

**5** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Extra Thickness.

**6** Press [OK]. The Extra Thickness screen displays the list of weights that can be used with the printer.

**7** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper weight.

**8** Press [OK]. The paper weight is set and the Media Type Setup screen appears.

Use the following procedure to specify whether duplex printing is allowed with custom paper.

```

Config type supp: a b
*****_
2 Transparent
3 Preprinted
      [ To leave ]

```

**1** In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Extra Type Config.

**2** Press [OK]. The Add. Type Setup screen displays the list of media types that can be used with the printer.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the custom paper (CUSTOM 1 to 8) for which to set the Single-sided print permission towards.

**4** Press [OK]. A menu appears for the selected media.

```

CUSTOM                               a b
*****_
2 verso
3 Name entry
      [ To leave ]

```

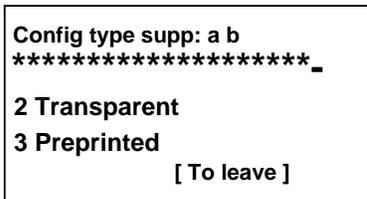


- 5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Duplex.
- 6 Press [OK]. The Duplex screen displays the list of weights that can be used with the printer.

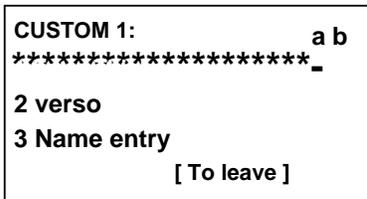
- 7 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to specify whether duplex printing is authorized.

- 8 Press [OK]. Duplex printing permission is set and the Media Type Setup screen is displayed.

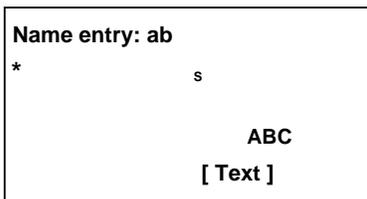
Use the procedure below to register the display name for the custom paper.



- 1 In the Param. paper, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Extra Type Config.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Add. Type Setup screen displays the list of media types that can be used with the printer.



- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the custom paper (CUSTOM 1 to 8) for which to register a name to display.
- 4 Press [OK]. A menu appears for the selected media.



- 5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Name Entry.
- 6 Press [OK]. The Name Entry screen appears.

- 7 Use the numeric keys to enter the name to display for the custom paper.

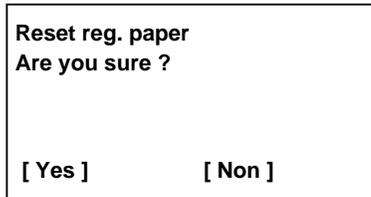


Note Up to 16 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

- 8 Press [OK]. Register the display name and the renamed custom paper screen is displayed.

## Reset reg. paper (Resets custom settings)

Resets all settings specified in Media Type Setup (setting the paper type) on page 4-35.



Reset reg. paper  
Are you sure ?

[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]

**1** In the Param. press **Y** or **y** to select Reset Paper. reg. paper.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

**3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Done. appears and the Param. paper appears at new.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Param menu. paper without resetting custom settings.

## stop. print

These settings specify the following print settings: paper source, paper feed mode, duplex printing, A4/LTR override, emulation mode, print quality, and pagination definition.

The options available in Param. print are the following :

- Paper Source (selecting the paper feed source)...4-40
- MP Tray Priority (settings for priority of feeding from the MP tray)...4-41
- Paper Feed Mode (Selecting the Paper Feed Source)...4-41
- Verto verso (Configuration of l'impression recto verso)...4-42
- Paper Output (Output Stack Selection)...4-43
- Ann. A4/Letter (Disregarding the difference between A4 and Letter sizes)...4-44
- Emulation (Setting Emulation)...4-44
- Font (Default font selection)...4-46
- Character set (character set definition)...4-49
- Print Quality. (Setting the print quality)...4-49
- Param. page (Setting paging)...4-51
- User Name (User name display settings)...4-54
- Job Name (Job Name Display Settings)...4-55

```

Param. impr.: ab
*****_
2 MP Tray Priority
3 Fashion alim paper
      [ To leave ]
  
```

### 1 Press [Menu].

2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. print..

3 Press [OK]. The Settings menu. print displays a list of available options.

## Paper source (selecting the paper feed source)

You can select the default paper feed source. Any optional feeders installed can also be chosen as the default paper source.

```

Source de paper: ab
1 By-pass
*****_
  
```

1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Source.

2 Press [OK]. The Paper Source screen displays a list of available paper sources.

The available paper sources are:

By-pass

Tray 1 (standard printer paper tray)

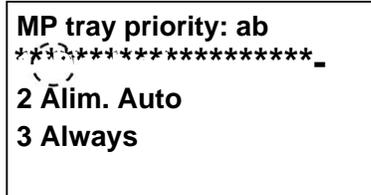
Tray 2 to 5 (optional paper feeders (only installed paper feeders are shown))

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired paper source.

4 Press [OK]. The paper source is set and the Param. print appears again.

## MP Tray Priority (settings for priority feeding from the MP tray)

If the paper is set in the MP tray, it is possible to give priority to feeding from the MP tray.



**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select MP Tray Priority.

**2** Press [OK]. The MP Tray Priority screen appears showing the available MP tray priority mode options.

Off (Printer driver settings are followed).

PSU Auto (if Auto is selected in the printer driver and there is paper in the MP tray, paper will be fed from the MP tray).

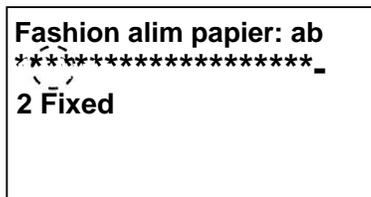
Always (If there is paper in the MP tray, it will feed from the MP tray regardless of the printer driver setting).

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the MP tray priority mode wish.

**4** Press [OK]. The MP tray priority mode is set and the menu Param. print appears again.

## Paper Feed Mode (Paper Feed Source Selection)

This mode specifies how the paper is loaded after the paper source and paper type have been chosen. If Auto is selected, the printer searches for a paper source that matches the paper size and type, and paper is then delivered from that source. If Fixed is selected and there is no corresponding paper source, processing continues as indicated by Paper Error for Error Handling. For more information on feeding paper when Fixed is selected, see Paper Error (Detection settings for paper size and type errors when the paper source is fixed) on page 4-89. The default setting is Auto. To change the settings, follow the steps below.



**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Feed Mode.

**2** Press [OK]. The Paper Feed Mode screen displays a list of available paper feed options.

**3** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the power mode of the desired paper.

**4** Press [OK]. The paper feed mode is set and the Param. print appears again.

## When the paper runs out during printing

When Paper Feed Mode is set to Corrected, if the paper in the tray runs out during printing, Load Paper in Tray 1. is displayed and the printer goes into standby. In this case, put paper back in the empty tray or use the procedure below to print from another paper source.

**1** While Load Paper in Tray 1. is displayed, press [Alt.] ([Left Select]). The Alternatives menu appears.

Alternative:		a b
*****~*****_		
C A4	Préimpr.	
D B5	Normal	

2 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the power source of the desired paper and paper size.

3 Press [OK]. Printing continues.

## Verto verso (Configuration of l'impression verso)

By using the duplex unit, you can automatically print on both sides of the paper.

Duplex printing is available for the following paper (media) types:

Normal

Pre-printed

hardcover

recycled

Rough

On your mind

Color

Perforated

High quality

Custom 1 to 8



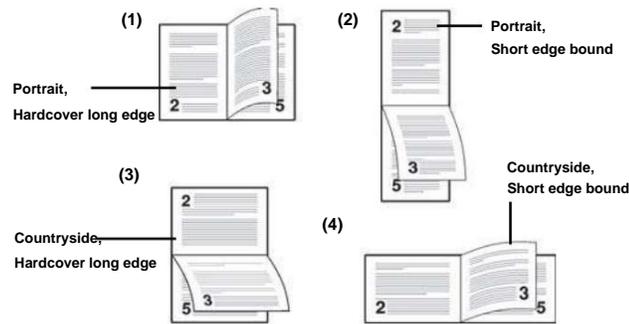
Note Duplex printing is also possible from the MP tray. If the size and type of paper fed from the MP tray do not match those of the tray designated as the paper source, a paper jam may occur.

When Custom is specified, duplex printing can be configured. For more information, refer to Custom Paper Settings on page 4-36.

## Binding styles

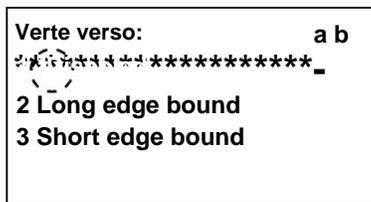
Binding refers to the way printed pages are joined together (by gluing, stapling, etc.) to form a book. There are two types of binding: long-edge, where pages are bound along their long edge, and short-edge, where they are bound along their short edge. When selecting the type of binding, it is also necessary to take into account the orientation of the printed page. You can use both types of binding whether you are working in landscape or portrait orientation.

In Duplex mode, the binding types available vary depending on the print orientation. There are four types of binding: (1) long-edge portrait (2) short-edge portrait, (3) long-edge landscape, and (4) short-edge landscape. The illustration below shows these binding methods.



**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Duplex.

**2** Press [OK]. The Duplex screen appears and displays the list of available duplex printing modes.



**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Simplex printing mode. desired back.

The following binding modes scroll across the screen:

- Disabled (default)
- Hardcover long edge
- Short edge bound

Selecting Off disables duplex printing.

**4** Press [OK]. The Duplex printing mode is set and the Param. print appears again.

## Paper Output (Output Stack Selection)

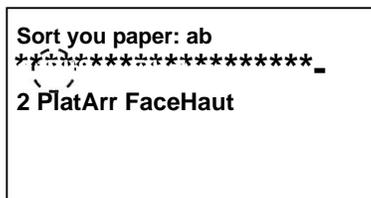
The Paper Output menu on the control panel allows you to select the output tray for prints: face-down output tray or face-up output tray.



**Note** This menu can be used for FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN.

**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Output.

**2** Press [OK]. The Paper Output screen appears.



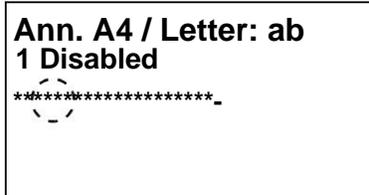
**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the receive mode - FlatTop F Bottom or FlatBack FaceUp.

**4** Press [OK]. The output pit is defined and the Param. print appears again.

## Ann. A4/Letter (Disregarding the difference between A4 and Letter sizes)

When Enabled is assigned to Ann. A4/Letter from the control panel, the printer ignores the difference between A4 and Letter sizes. Printing continues without an error message, even though the actual paper size in the tray differs from that used for the job layout.

By default, this feature is Enabled.



- 1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Ann. A4 / Letter.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Ann. A4/Letter is displayed.

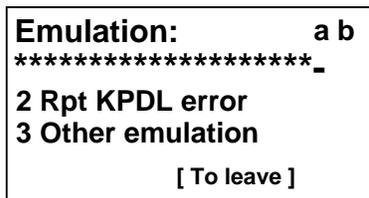
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Off or On.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Settings menu. print appears again.

## Emulation (Definition of emulation)

You can change the emulation mode. Use the procedure below to select the mode.



Note To print the PDF file using FTP printing, set the emulation to KPDL.



- 1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Emulation.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Emulation menu appears.



- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. emulation.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Settings screen. emulation displays a list of available emulations. The default settings depend on the delivery destination.

The available emulations are:

PCL6  
 IBM Proprinter  
 EPSON LQ-850  
 Line Printer  
 KPDL  
 KPDL(Auto)

- 5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired emulation.
- 6 Press [OK]. Emulation is set and the Emulation menu appears again.

## KPDL Error Rpt (KPDL Error Printing)

The printer can print descriptions of errors that occur during KPDL emulation. The default setting differs by country or region.

**IMPORTANT** This setting is displayed only when KPDL or KPDL(Auto) is selected for emulation.

1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Emulation.

2 Press [OK]. The Emulation menu appears.

```

Emulation:                a b
*****_
2 Rpt KPDL error
3 Other emulation
      [ To leave ]
  
```

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select KPDL Error Rpt.

4 Press [OK]. The KPDL Error Rpt screen appears.

```

Rpt KPDL error: ab
*****_
2 Enabled
  
```

5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the reports are printed.

6 Press [OK]. The error report print setting is set and the Emulation menu reappears.

## Alternate emulation (Alternate emulation for KPDL emulation)

KPDL emulation (AUTO) allows the printer to automatically change emulation mode based on data received during printing.

**IMPORTANT** This setting is displayed only when KPDL(Auto) is selected for emulation.

1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Emulation.

2 Press [OK]. The Emulation menu appears.

```

Emulation:                a b
*****_
2 Rpt KPDL error
3 Other emulation
      [ To leave ]
  
```

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Other Emulation.

4 Press [OK]. The Other Emulation screen displays a list of other available emulations.

The other available emulations are:

PCL6

IBM Proprinter

EPSON LQ-850

Print Line

```

Other Emulation: ab
*****_
2 IBM Proprinter
3 EPSON LQ-850
  
```

**5** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the other emulation you want.

**6** Press [OK]. The other emulation is set and the menu Emulation is displayed again.

## Font (Default font selection)

It is possible to select the default font. This can be one of the internal fonts or a font downloaded to the printer's memory, or a font stored on the SD/SDHC card or SSD.

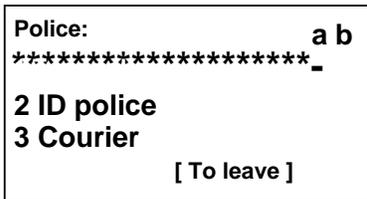
In this menu it is also possible to define the type and pitch of the Courier and Letter Gothic fonts.

The options available in the Font menu are as follows:

- Selecting Courier/Letter Gothic Normal or Dark...4-47
- Changing the default font size...4-48
- Character spacing...4-48

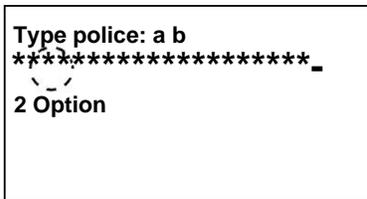
**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font.

**2** Press [OK]. The Font menu appears.



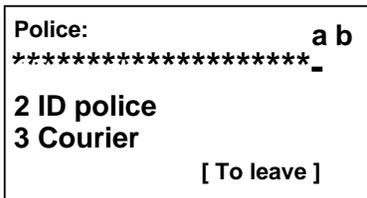
**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font Type.

**4** Press [OK]. The Font Type screen appears.



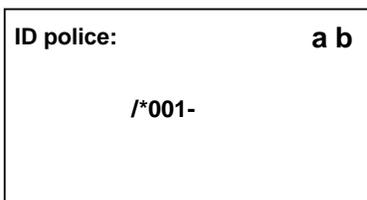
**5** To select a font built into the printer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Internal.

**6** Press [OK]. Select font type. The Font menu appears again.



**7** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font ID.

**8** Press [OK]. The Font ID entry screen is displayed.



- 9** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the font number desired.



**Note** You can view the built-in font numbers by printing a font list. For more information, refer to Font List (Printing a list of printer fonts) on page 4-14.

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

To select optional fonts other than the built-in fonts, select Option in step 5. This operation is possible only if the printer contains optional fonts.

The letter before the number indicates the location of the font.

In: Internal Police

S: Soft font (downloaded)

M: Fonts located on the optional SD/SDHC card

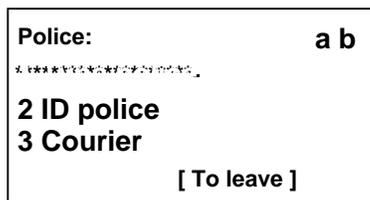
H: Fonts located on RAM disk or optional SSD

- 10** Press [OK]. The default font is set and the Font menu appears again.

### Select Courier/Letter Gothic Normal or Dark font

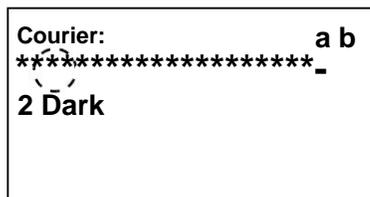
The thickness of the Courier or Letter Gothic font is set using the Normal or Dark options. In the procedure below, the Courier font is selected. The procedure is the same for the Letter Gothic font.

- 1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font.



- 2** Press [OK]. The Font menu appears.

- 3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Courier. If you want to select the Letter Gothic font weight, choose Letter Gothic instead of Courier.



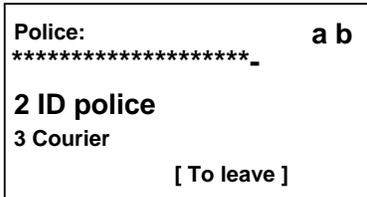
- 4** Press [OK]. The Courier screen appears.

- 5** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Normal or Dark.

- 6** Press [OK]. The font weight is set and the menu Font is displayed again.

## Changing the default font size

You can change the default font size. If you have selected a proportional font, it is possible to modify the size of the characters.

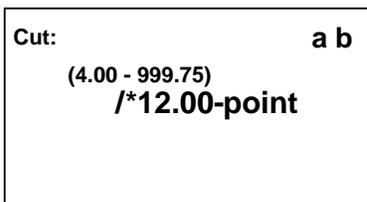


1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font.

2 Press [OK]. The Font menu appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Size.

4 Press [OK]. The Size entry screen is displayed.



5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the font size.

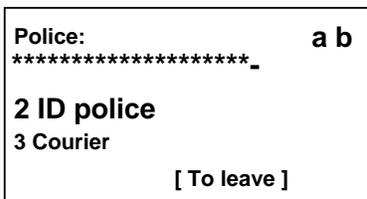


Note The font size can be set between 4.00 and 999.75 points, in 0.25 point increments.

6 Press [OK]. The font size is set and the Font menu appears again.

## character spacing

You can set character spacing for patched fonts.

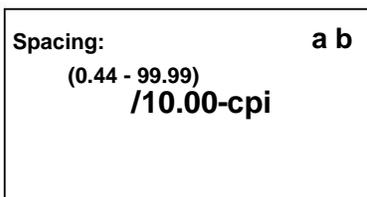


1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Font.

2 Press [OK]. The Font menu appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Spacing.

4 Press [OK]. The Spacing input screen is displayed.



**5 Use the numeric keys or press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to enter character spacing.**

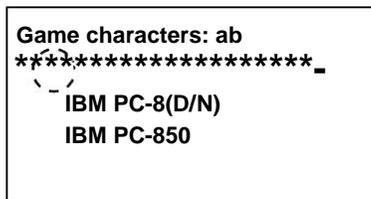


Note Character spacing can be set between 0.44 and 99.99 cpi, in increments of 0.01 character per inch.

**6 Press [OK]. The character spacing is set and the Font menu reappears.**

## Character set (character set definition)

You can change the character code set. The available code sets vary depending on the active font. (Default is IBM PC-8 game.)



**1 In the Param. print, press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Character set.**

**2 Press [OK]. The Character Set screen appears and lists available code sets.**

**3 Push  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select the desired code set.**

**4 Press [OK]. The code set is defined and the Param. print appears again.**

## Print Quality (Setting the print quality)

In the Print Quality menu, you can select KIR mode, EcoPrint mode, and other settings.

The options available in Print Quality. are the following :

- KIR Mode (KIR Mode Selection)...4-50
- EcoPrint (EcoPrint mode selection)...4-50
- Print resolution. (Print resolution selection)...4-50
- Print density. (Selecting the print density)...4-51

**1 In the Param. print, press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Print Quality.**

**2 Press [OK]. The Print Quality menu is displayed.**



### KIR mode (KIR mode selection)

This printer is equipped with the KIR (Kyocera Image Refinement) smoothing function. KIR uses the software to improve the resolution, and achieve high quality printing with 600 dpi and 300 dpi resolution. The default is Active. KIR has no effect on print speed.



1 In the Print Quality menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select KIR.

2 Press [OK]. The KIR screen appears.

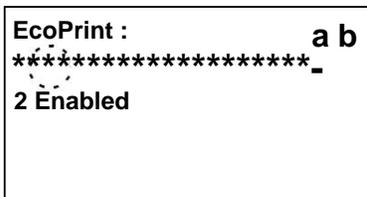
3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether KIR mode is on.

4 Press [OK]. The KIR mode is set and the Print Quality menu. appears again.

### EcoPrint (EcoPrint mode selection)

By enabling EcoPrint mode, you can reduce the amount of toner used during printing. It is recommended that EcoPrint mode be used for test prints or other situations that do not require high quality printing, as images printed in this mode may be slightly coarser than with resolution printing. standard. EcoPrint has no effect on print speed.

Use the procedure below to select the EcoPrint mode. The default setting is Off.



1 In the Print Quality menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EcoPrint.

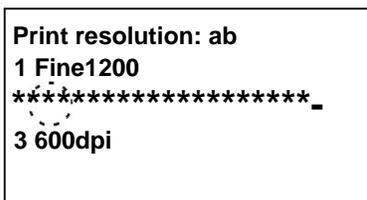
2 Press [OK]. The EcoPrint screen appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the EcoPrint mode is activated.

4 Press [OK]. The EcoPrint mode is set and the Print Quality menu. appears again.

### Print Resolution (Print resolution selection)

You can set the default print resolution in four ways: 300dpi, 600dpi, Fast1200 and Fine1200. These values, taken in this order, make it possible to obtain increasingly sharp printed characters and graphics.



1 In the Print Quality menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print Resolution.

2 Press [OK]. The Print Resolution screen appears. is displayed.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the print resolution.

- 4 Press [OK]. The print resolution is set and the menu Print Quality appears again.

## Print Density (Print Density Selection)

It is possible to adjust the print density in five steps: from 1 + light to 5 + dark. The default setting is 3.



- 1 In the Print Quality menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print Density.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Print Density screen is displayed.
- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the print density from five values from 1 lighter to 5 darker
- 4 Press [OK]. The print density is set and the menu Print Quality appears again.

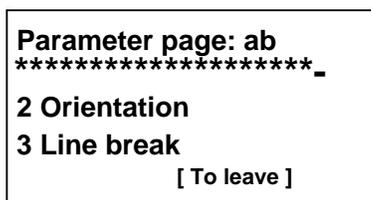
## Param. page (Page definition)

In the Settings menu. page, you can set the number of copies, page orientation, and other pagination-related settings.

The options available in Param. page are as follows:

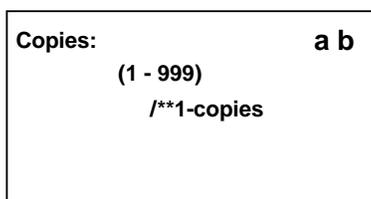
- Copies (Name of copies)...4-51
- Orientation (Print Orientation)...4-52
- Line feed...4-52
- Carriage Return...4-53
- Extended A4 (Extended A4 Pitch)...4-53
- XPS Fit To Page (Adjusting the XPS file print size)...4-53
- TIFF/JPEG format (Adjusting the print size of TIFF/JPEG file)...4-54

- 1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. page.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Param. page is displayed.



## Copies (Name of copies)

You can set the number of copies to print for each page.

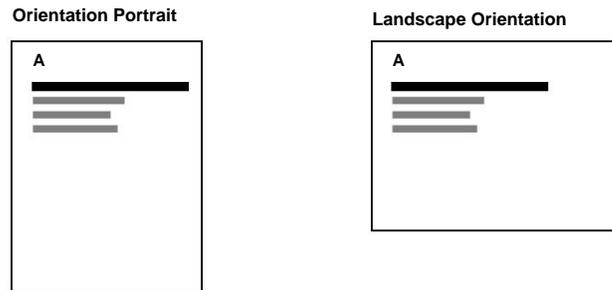


- 1 In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Copies.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Copies screen appears.

- 3 Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the name of copies.
- 4 Press [OK]. The setting is saved and the Param. page is displayed again.

## Orientation (Print Orientation)

You can choose portrait (vertical) or landscape (horizontal) orientation.

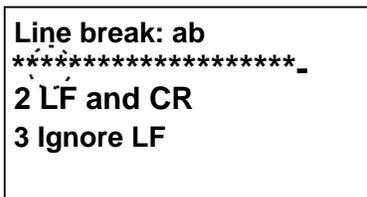


- 1 In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Orientation.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Orientation screen appears.
- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired orientation.
- 4 Press [OK]. The orientation is set and the Param. page appears again.

## Line break

The following procedure tells the printer what action to take if a line feed code (0AH) is received.

- Line break: performs a line break (default).
- LF and CR: performs a line feed and a carriage return.
- Ignore LF / no line break is performed.

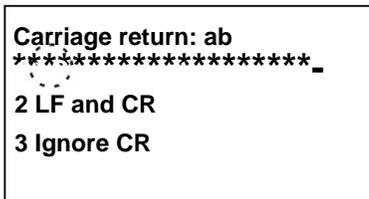


- 1 In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Line Feed.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Line Break screen appears.
- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired action.
- 4 Press [OK]. The action is set and the Param. page appears again.

## Carriage return

The following procedure tells the printer what action to take when a carriage return (0DH) code is received.

- Carriage Return: Performs a carriage return (default).
- LF and CR: performs a line feed and a carriage return.
- Ignore CR: No carriage return is performed.



**1** In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select

Carriage return.

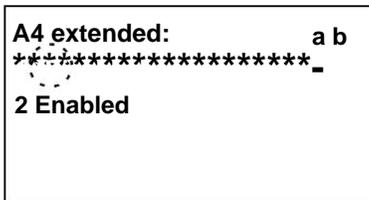
**2** Press [OK]. The Carriage Return screen appears.

**3** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired action.

**4** Press [OK]. The action is set and the Param. page appears again.

## Extended A4 (Extended A4 Pitch)

When set to On, this mode increases the maximum number of characters that can be printed on one line of A4 (78 characters with 10 cpi pitch) and Letter (80 characters with 10 cpi) page line. 10 cpi spacing). This parameter applies only in PCL 6 emulation.



**1** In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select

A4 extended.

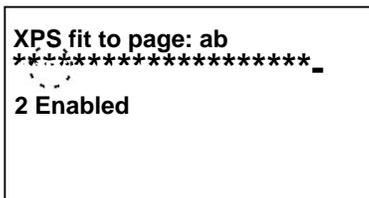
**2** Press [OK]. The extended A4 screen is displayed.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether extended A4 mode is activated.

**4** Press [OK]. The extended mode setting is set and the menu Param. page is displayed again.

## XPS Fit To Page (Adjusting the XPS file print size)

Select On for this setting to enlarge or reduce XPS files according to the print area during printing.



**1** In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select

XPS fit-to-page.

**2** Press [OK]. The XPS Fit To Page screen appears.

- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the XPS adjustment mode to the page.
- 4 Press [OK]. XPS fit to page setting is set and the Settings menu. page is displayed again.

### TIFF/JPEG format (Adjusting the print size of TIFF/JPEG file)

Use this setting to select the printing method used when TIFF or JPEG files are printed directly.



- 1 In the Param. page, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Format TIFF/JPEG.
- 2 Press [OK]. The TIFF/JPEG Format screen appears.  
 The options available in TIFF/JPEG Size are: • Paper Size (default)  
 Images are resized to match the paper size when printed.
  - Picture resolution  
 Image files are printed at the resolution specified in the resolution information. Images without resolution information are printed using the Paper Size setting.
  - Print resolution.  
 Images are printed using a 1 to 1 correspondence between pixels in the image file and printed dots. For example, the print size of a 600 x 300 pixel image file is 1 inch x 1/2 inch.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the TIFF/JPEG Format mode is activated.
- 4 Press [OK]. The TIFF/JPEG Format setting is set and the Param. page is displayed again.



Note Images are automatically rotated during printing to achieve the best match between the appearance of the image file and the paper used for printing.

### Username (Username display settings)

Set whether or not the user name is displayed in the printer driver.



- 1 In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Username.
- 2 Press [OK]. The User Name screen appears.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On or Off.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Username parameter is set and the menu Param. print appears again.

## Job Name (Job Name Display Settings)

Set whether or not the job name is displayed in the printer driver.

**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Job Name.

**2** Press [OK]. The Job Name screen appears.



**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On or Off.

**4** Press [OK]. The Job Name parameter is set and the menu Param. print appears again.

## Network (Network Settings)

This printer supports TCP/IP and TCP/IP (IPv6) protocols.

IP is short for Internet Protocol. This printer usually uses the TCP/IP protocol (IPv4), but it also provides a separate setting for next generation IP, IPv6.

TCP/IP (IPv4) uses 32-bit IP addresses, but the rapid growth in the number of Internet users has resulted in a shortage of IP addresses. IPv6 was developed to extend the range of available IP addresses by using 128-bit IP addresses.

The options available in Network Settings are as follows:

- TCP/IP (Enable/Disable TCP/IP)...4-56
- Param. IPv4 (TCP / IP IPv4 parameters) ... 4-57
- Param. IPv6 (paramètres TCP/IP IPv6)...4-61
- Protocol Detail (Detailed settings for the network protocol)...4-62
- Restart. network. (Network Card Restarting)...4-63



**Note** Check the selection of network settings with your network administrator. After making all settings for the network, restart the network. Refer to Restart section. network. (Restarting the Network Card) on page 4-63. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account!

When Command Center RX is in use, network settings and security settings can be easily changed and checked from the computer. For more information, see Command Center RX User Guide.

- 1 Press [Menu].
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Network.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Network menu appears.

Network: a b  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_

2 Restart. network.

[To leave]

- 4 Select Setup. TCP/IP and press [OK]. The screen of menu Config. TCP/IP s'affiche.

Config. TCP/IP: a b  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_

2 Param. IPv4

3 Param. IPv6

[ To leave ]

## TCP/IP (Enable/Disable TCP/IP)

TCP/IP system refers to the Internet system which has a 5-layer structure consisting of interface layer, link layer, network layer (IP), transport layer (TCP/UDP) and of the application layer.

The interface layer is a key layer in the TCP/IP system that provides an abstract link-independent interface (communication line: frame relay, Ethernet, etc.) to the IP module (IP layer). This means that the IP module can use this abstract interface (independent of the link type) to exchange IP packets in both directions with the link layer.

- 1 In the Setup menu. TCP/IP, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select TCP/IP.



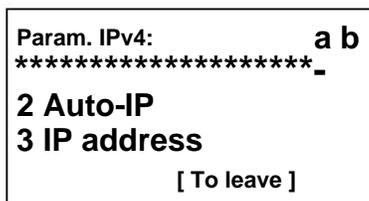
2 Press [OK]. The TCP/IP screen appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether TCP/IP is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The TCP/IP setting is set and the Config. TCP/IP is displayed again.

## Param. IPv4 (TCP / IP IPv4 parameters)

Selects settings for TCP/IP (IPv4).



1 In the Setup menu. TCP/IP, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Settings. IPv4.

2 Press [OK]. The Param. IPv4 is displayed.

The options available in the TCP/IP (IPv4) settings are as follows:

- DHCP (DHCP Settings)...4-57
- Auto-IP (Auto-IP Setting)...4-58
- IP Address (IP Address Settings)...4-58
- Subnet mask. (Subnet Mask Settings)...4-59
- Gateway def. (Gateway Settings)...4-59
- Bonjour (Bonjour Settings)...4-60

**IMPORTANT** The DHCP, Auto-IP, IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway, and Bonjour menu options for TCP/IP (IPv4 setting) are displayed when TCP/IP is enabled.

## DHCP (DHCP Settings)

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) is the protocol that assigns the information necessary to establish a network connection when a host attempts to connect to the network (Internet). This information includes the local node's IP address and default router (the router in the host's own network system) and Domain Name System (DNS) server. DHCP is an extension of the BOOTP (Bootstrap) boot protocol.

1 In the Param. IPv4, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select DHCP.

2 Press [OK]. The DHCP screen appears.

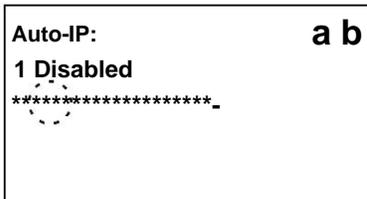


- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether DHCP is enabled.
- 4 Press [OK]. The DHCP setting is set and the Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

### Auto-IP (Auto-IP setting)

This protocol is used for the automatic assignment of an IP address when connecting to a small network that does not have a DHCP server. Select an address in the range of 169.254.0.1 to 169.254.255.254 and if no other device on the network uses this address, it is used as the machine address.

- 1 In the Param. IPv4, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Auto-IP.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Auto-IP screen appears.



- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether Auto-IP is enabled.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Auto-IP setting is set and the menu Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

### IP address (IP address settings)

An IP address is the address of the network device (such as a computer) and is included in IP packets as needed for sending and receiving Internet data (IP packets). IP addresses can be destination addresses or source addresses.

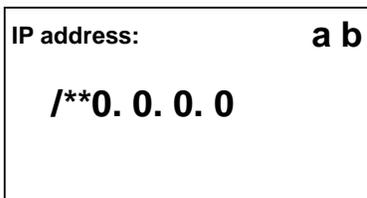
More specifically, an IP address is a bit string consisting of a host address (or host section) that identifies a computer (host) connected to the Internet and a network address (or network section) that identifies the network to which belongs to the computer (or more specifically, the network interface of the computer). Strings of bits (IP addresses) that are unique across the Internet are assigned to each computer or interface.

The IP addresses currently used on the Internet (IPv4) have a fixed length of 32 bits.



Note When entering the IP address, ensure that the DHCP option is set to Disabled.

- 1 In the Param. IPv4, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select IP address.
- 2 Press [OK]. The IP Address screen appears.



- 3 Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the IP address.  
It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.  
Increase or decrease numbers by pressing  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .  
Use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to change input position, shown highlighted.
- 4 Press [OK]. The IP address is stored and the Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

## Mask under res. (Subnet mask settings)

The subnet mask is a way of increasing the network address section of an IP address.

A subnet mask represents all network address sections as a 1 and all host address sections as a 0. The number of bits in the prefix indicates the length of the network address. The term prefix refers to something that is added to the beginning and in this context it indicates the first section of the IP address.

When an IP address is written, the length of the network address can be indicated by the length of the prefix after a forward slash

(/). For example, "24" in the address "133.210.2.0/24". In this way, "133.210.2.0/24" indicates the IP address "133.210.2.0" with a 24-bit prefix (network section).

This new network address section (originally part of the host address), made possible by the subnet mask, is called the subnet address.



**Note** When entering the subnet mask, ensure that the DHCP option is set to Disabled.

**Sub-Res Mask: ab**

**/255.255. 0. 0**

**1** In the Param. IPv4, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Mask under res..

**2** Press [OK]. The Mask screen under res. is displayed.

**3** Use the number keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the subnet mask.

It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.

Increase or decrease numbers by pressing  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .

Use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to change input position, shown highlighted.

**4** Press [OK]. The subnet mask is stored and the Settings menu IPv4 is displayed again.

## Gateway def. (Gateway Settings)

Gateway generally refers to a protocol conversion device used to allow the interconnection of networks having different protocols.

For example, a gateway device is needed to connect a different closed network (using its own protocol) to the Internet open network (using TCP/IP).

By installing a gateway, communication protocols and data display modes on different networks are made compatible.

On TCP/IP networks, the term gateway is used to refer to routers.



**Note** Before entering the gateway, ensure that the DHCP option is set to Disabled.

Default gateway: ab

/\*\*0. 0. 0. 0

**1** In the Param. IPv4, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Default gateway..

**2** Press [OK]. The Gateway Def. is displayed.

**3** Use the numeric keys or press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to set the default gateway.

It is possible to choose any value between 000 and 255.

Increase or decrease numbers by pressing **ÿ** or **ÿ**.

Use **ÿ** and **ÿ** to change input position, shown highlighted.

**4** Press [OK]. The default gateway is memorized and the menu Param. IPv4 is displayed again.

## Hello (Bonjour Settings)

Bonjour (also known as Zero Configuration Network) is a service that automatically discovers computers, devices, and services on an IP network

Since an industry standard IP protocol is used, Bonjour allows devices to recognize each other automatically without specifying an IP address or setting a DNS server.

Bonjour also sends and receives network packets on UDP port 5353. If a firewall is enabled, the user must verify that UDP port 5353 is always open for Bonjour to work properly. Some firewalls are set to drop only certain Bonjour packets. If Bonjour is not working stably, check the firewall settings and make sure Bonjour is registered in the exception list and Bonjour packets are accepted.

If you install Bonjour on Windows XP Service Pack 2 or higher, the Windows Firewall will be set correctly for Bonjour.

**1** In the Param. IPv4, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Hello.

**2** Press [OK]. The Hello screen appears.

Hello: a b

1 Disabled

\*\*\*\*\*\_

**3** Push **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select whether automatic detection is activated.

**4** Press [OK]. The auto-detect setting is set and the Settings menu. IPv4 is displayed again.

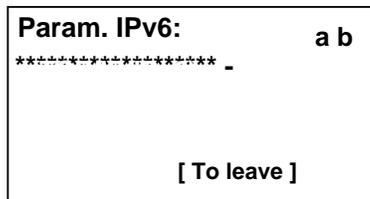
## Param. IPv6 (paramètres TCP/IP IPv6)

Selects settings for TCP/IP (IPv6).

TCP/IP (IPv6) is based on the current Internet protocol, TCP/IP (IPv4). IPv6 is the next generation of the Internet protocol and it expands the available address space to solve the lack of addresses problem associated with IPv4. This new protocol also makes it possible to introduce other improvements such as additional security functionality and the ability to prioritize data transmission.

1 In the Setup menu. TCP/IP, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Param. IPv6.

2 Press [OK]. The Param. IPv6 is displayed.



The options available in the TCP/IP (IPv6) settings are as follows:

- TCP/IP (IPv6) (Activer/désactiver TCP/IP (IPv6))...4-61
- RA (Stateless) (Paramètres RA (Stateless))...4-61
- DHCPv6 (DHCPv6 Settings)...4-62

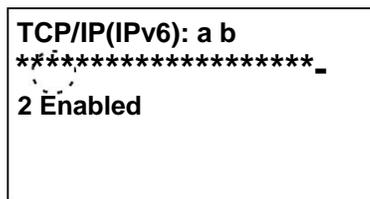
**IMPORTANT** The RA (Stateless) and DHCPv6 menu options for TCP/IP (IPv6) are displayed when TCP/IP (IPv6) is enabled.

## TCP/IP (IPv6) (Activer/désactiver TCP/IP (IPv6))

Specifies whether TCP/IP (IPv6) is used.

1 In the Param. IPv6, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select TCP/IP(IPv6).

2 Press [OK]. The TCP/IP(IPv6) screen appears.



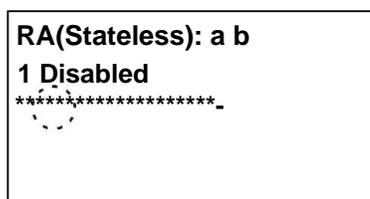
3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether TCP/IP (IPv6) is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The TCP/IP (IPv6) setting is set and the menu Param. IPv6 is displayed again.

## RA (Stateless) (Paramètres RA (Stateless))

The IPv6 router communicates (transmits) information such as the global address prefix using ICMPv6. This information is the Router Advertisement (RA).

ICMPv6 stands for Internet Control Message Protocol and it is an IPv6 standard defined in RFC 2463 "Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification".



1 In the Param. IPv6, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select RA(Stateless).

2 Press [OK]. The RA(Stateless) screen is displayed.

3 Push  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select whether RA (Stateless) is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The RA (Stateless) setting is set and the menu Param. IPv6 is displayed again.

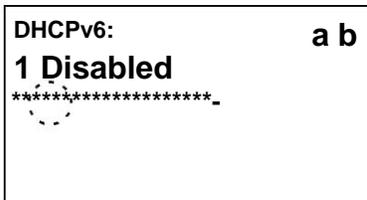
## DHCPv6 (DHCPv6 Settings)

DHCPv6 is the next generation of dynamic host configuration protocol for the Internet and it supports IPv6. It extends the BOOTP boot protocol which defines the protocols used for transferring configuration information to network hosts.

DHCPv6 allows the DHCP server to use its extended functionality to send configuration parameters to an IPv6 node. Since the network addresses that can be used are assigned automatically, the management overhead of the IPv6 node is reduced in systems where the administrator must exercise tight control over IP address assignment.

1 In the Param. IPv6, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select DHCPv6.

2 Press [OK]. The DHCPv6 screen appears.



3 Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select whether DHCPv6 is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The DHCPv6 setting is set and the Param. IPv6 is displayed again.

## Protocol Detail (Detailed settings for network protocol)

Selects settings for Protocol Details.

Element	Description	Default setting	System restart†
NetBEUI	Select whether or not to receive documents using NetBEUI.	Enabled	*
SNMPv3	Define SNMPv3.	Disabled	$\downarrow$
FTP (Server)	Select whether or not to receive documents using FTP.	Enabled	$\downarrow$
SNMP	Select whether or not to communicate with SNMP.	Enabled	$\downarrow$
SMTP (transmis. e-mail)	Select whether or not to send e-mail with SMTP.	Disabled	*
POP3 (réception e-mail)	Select whether or not to receive e-mail with POP3.	Disabled	*
Port Raw	Select communication or not with the RAW port.	Enabled	$\downarrow$
LPD	Select whether or not to receive documents using the LDP network protocol.	Enabled	$\downarrow$
HTTP	Select whether or not to communicate with HTTP.	Enabled	$\downarrow$

Element	Description	Default setting	System restart†
LDAP	Select whether or not to use LDAP.	Disabled	x

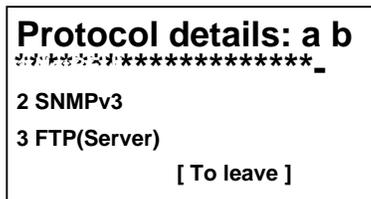
† †: The machine must be restarted when the parameter is changed.

x: The machine does not need to be restarted when the setting is changed.

Proceed as follows.

1 In the Setup menu. TCP/IP, press † or † to select Protocol Details.

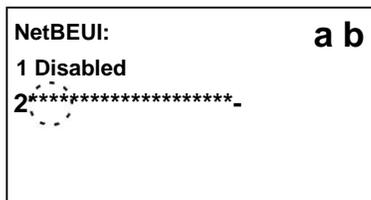
2 Press [OK]. The Protocol Details menu appears.



3 Press † or † to select the item to set.

4 Press [OK]. Displays the setting screen for the items selected in step 3.

The screen shown is the one that appears when NetBEUI is selected.



5 Push † or † to select On or Off.

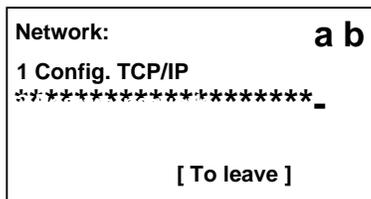
6 Press [OK]. The Protocol Details menu is displayed on new.

## Restart network. (Network card restart)

After setting all network parameters, restart the network card of the machine. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account.

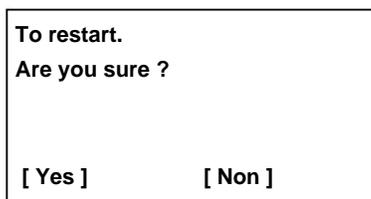
1 In the Network menu, press † or † to select Restart network.

2 Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.



3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The Restarting... message appears and the network is restarted.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Network menu without restarting the network.



## Optional Network (Optional Network Settings)

This function selects settings for the optional network interface kit (IB-50) or wireless network interface kit (IB-51).

 **Note** This function is displayed only when an optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

The options available in the Optional Network settings are as follows:

- Wireless Network (Wireless Network Settings)...4-65
- General (General settings for the optional network interface kit)...4-72
- Communication (Selecting the network interface to use)...4-75

 **Note** Check the selection of network settings with your network administrator. After making all settings for the network, restart the network. Refer to Restart section. network. (Restarting the Network Card) on page 4-63. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account!

When Command Center RX is in use, network settings and security settings can be easily changed and checked from the computer. For more information, see Command Center RX User Guide.

### 1 Press [Menu].

2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Optional Network.

3 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.



**Note** When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the optional Network menu screen is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

Login nom utilis :O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Access password:

[Connexion]

4 With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

Login nomutilis :ab  
\*

ABC  
[ Text ]

5 Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login input field password.

Login nom utilis :O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[Connexion]

```

Login mot passe: ab
*
                                     ABC
                               [ Text ]

```

7 Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

```

Login nom utilis :O b
Admin
Login to pass:
/*****_
                               [ Connexion]

```

8 Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

```

Network optional: ab
*****_
2 General
3 Communication
                               [ To leave ]

```

9 Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name of user login and login password are correct, the Network option menu displays a list of available options.

## Wireless Network (Wireless Network Settings)

This function selects the settings for the Wireless Network.



**Note** Wireless Network is displayed only when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

```

Wireless network: ab
!*^*****_
2 Install. fast
3 Install. perso
                               [ To leave ]

```

1 In the optional Network menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Wireless Network.

2 Press [OK]. The Wireless Network menu appears.

The following operations are possible:

- Connected status. (Check network connection status without fil) ... 4-65
- Install. quick (quick setup for wireless network)...4-66
- Install. Custom (Detailed settings for the wireless network)...4-68

## Connected Status (Check wireless network connection status)

When the optional wireless network interface kit (IB-51) is installed, it is possible to check the status of the wireless network.

```

Statute connex.: P b
State: 1/ 2
Connection

```

1 In the Wireless Network menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Online Status.

2 Press [OK]. The Connection Status screen. is displayed.

**Statute connexion: P b**  
 Name res. (SSID): 2/2  
 AAAA  
 [ Details ]

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ . The name res. (SSID) is displayed.

Details: O b  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU  
 VWXYZabcdefghijklmnop  
 rstuvwxyz1234567890

If the full name for the Res. (SSID) does not fit on one line, press [Detail] ([Right Select]) to switch to 3-line name display.

### Install. quick (quick setup for wireless network)

When connecting to an access point compatible with automatic wireless network installation, connection settings can be selected using Install. fast.

**Install. rapide: a b**  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 2 Push button  
 3 PIN (product)  
 [ To leave ]

**1** In the Wireless Network menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Install. fast.

**2** Press [OK]. The Install menu. fast is displayed.

The following operations are possible:

- Network available. (Show access points)
- Push button (Connection using the push button)
- PIN (product) (Connecting using a PIN code (for Wireless Network Interface Kit))
- PIN (terminal) (Connection using a PIN code (for the point access))

### Network available (Show access points)

Displays the access points to which it is possible to connect.

**Network available: ab**  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 Pointaccess\_002  
 Pointaccess\_003  
 [Recharg.]

**1** In the Install menu. quickly, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Network available.

**2** Press [OK]. The Network Available screen. is displayed.

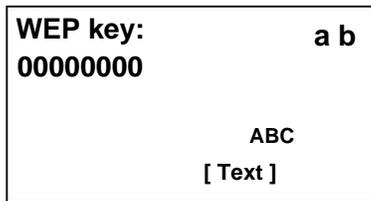


**Note** If the desired access point cannot be found, press [Reload] ([Right Select]) to update the information.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the access point to which you want to connect.

**4** Press [OK]. The connection with the access point is started.

When it is necessary to enter an encryption key, the WEP key entry screen or the pre-shared key entry screen is displayed.

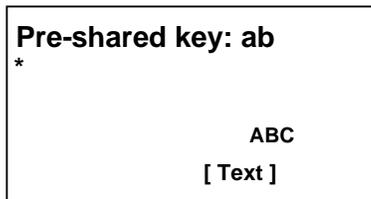


When a WEP key must be entered:

Enter the WEP key using the numeric keys, then press [OK].



Up to 26 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.



When a pre-shared key must be entered:

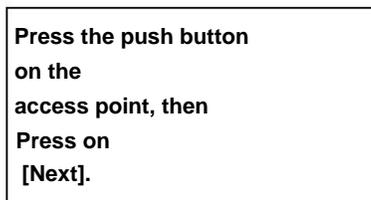
Enter the pre-shared key using the numeric keys, then press [OK].



Note The number of characters is 8 to 64. For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

#### Push button (Connection using the push button)

When the access point is compatible with the automatic wireless network setup button, it is possible to configure the wireless settings automatically using the button and the printer's control panel.



1 In the Install menu, quickly, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Push Button.

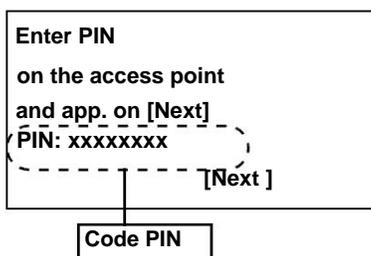
2 Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.

3 Press the wireless network auto-installation button on the access point.

4 Press [Next] ([Right Select]). The message Connecting... is displayed and the connection to the access point starts.

#### PIN (product) (Connecting using a PIN (for Wireless Network Interface Kit))

The connection is started using the PIN code for the machine. The displayed PIN must be entered on the access point. The PIN code for the machine is generated automatically.



1 In the Install menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select PIN(product).

2 Press [OK]. A PIN code is displayed on the screen.

3 Note the PIN code displayed on the screen.

4 Touch [Next] ([Right Select]). Connecting... is displayed.

5 On the access point, immediately enter the PIN code noted in step 3. The connection with the access point starts.

#### PIN (terminal) (Connection using a PIN (for access point))

The connection is started using the PIN code for the access point. Enter the PIN code for the access point. For details of the PIN code for the access point, refer to the user manual of the access point.

1 In the Install menu, quickly, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select PIN(terminal).

2 Press [OK]. The PIN code input screen is displayed.

3 Enter the PIN code using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 8 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

4 Press [OK]. The Connecting... message appears and the connection to the access point starts.

#### Install. Custom (Detailed settings for the wireless network)

It is possible to change the detailed settings of the wireless network.

1 In the Wireless Network menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Install. personal.

2 Press [OK]. The Install menu. personal is displayed.

The following operations are possible:

- Res. (SSID) (access point SSID record)
- Connection mode (Toggles between connection modes)
- Channel (Channel settings)
- Network Authentication (Network authentication setting)
- Encryption (Encryption settings)

#### Res name (SSID) (access point SSID record)

This function sets the SSID (Service Set Identifier) for the wireless network access point to which the machine will be connected.

1 In the Install menu, custom, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to Select Network Name. (SSID).

2 Press [OK]. The Net Name entry screen. (SSID) is displayed.

3 Enter the new SSID of the access point using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

4 Press [OK]. The Install menu. personal is displayed again.

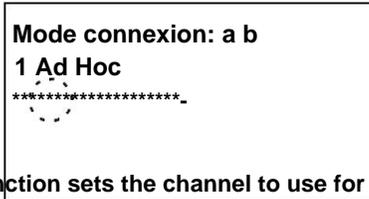
This function selects the wireless network connection method. Define Ad Hoc when machines are connected directly to each other, without going through an access point Control Panel

select Connection mode.

Connection mode (Toggles between connection modes) **2 Press [OK]. The Connection Mode screen appears.**

**The available connection modes are:**

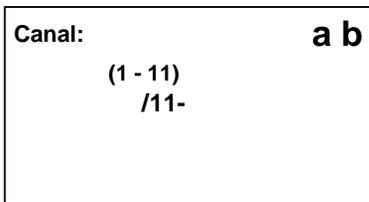
- Ad Hoc (Connection without going through an access point)
- 1 In the Install menu. custom, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to**
- Infrastructure (Connection via an access point)



This function sets the channel to use for the wireless network.

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the connection mode.**
- 1 In the Install menu. custom, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to**
- 4 Press [OK]. The Install menu. personal is displayed again.**
- 2 Press [OK]. The Channel screen appears.**

Channel (Channel Settings)



**3 Enter the channel number using the numeric keys,  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .**

This function defines the authentication method to use when connecting to an access point.  **Note** The channel can be between 1 and 11.

**4 Press [OK]. The Install menu. personal is displayed again.**

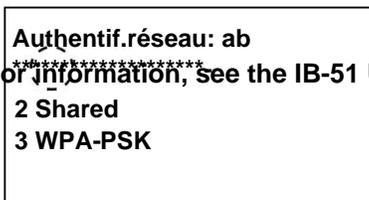
Network Authentication (Network authentication setting)

select Network Authentication.

 **Note** It is also possible to configure the network authentication with WPA-Enterprise and WPA2-Enterprise using the web page of the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-54). For more

**The available authentication methods are:**

- Open
- 1 In the Install menu. custom, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to**
- Share
- WPA-PSK
- WPA2-PSK



**For information, see the IB-51 User Manual. Note WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK are only displayed when Infrastructure has been set as Connection Mode (Switching Between Connection Modes) on page 4-69.**



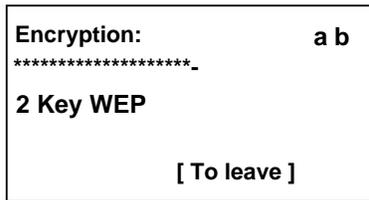
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the authentication method desired.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Install menu. personal is displayed again.

### Encryption (Encryption settings)

This function selects encryption settings.



Note This setting is not displayed when the setting for Network Authentication (Network Authentication Setting) on page 4-69 is set to use an authentication method other than Open, Shared, WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK using the utility.



- 1 In the Install menu. press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Encryption.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Encryption screen appears.

The following operations are possible:

- Data Encryption (Data Encryption Setting)...4-70
- WEP Key (WEP Key Settings)...4-70
- Pre-Shared Key (Pre-Shared Key Settings)...4-71



Note WEP Key is displayed when Network Authentication (Network Authentication Setting) on page 4-69 is set to Open or Shared.

Pre-Shared Key is displayed when Network Authentication (Network Authentication Setting) on page 4-69 is set to WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK.

### Data encryption (Data encryption setting)

This function sets the encryption method.



- 1 In the Encryption menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Data encryption.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Data Encryption screen appears.



Note The encryption methods that can be selected vary depending on the authentication method set in Network Authentication (Network Authentication Setting) on page 4-69.

Disable or WEP can be selected when Open or Shared are set.

TKIP, AES or Auto can be selected when WPA PSK is set.

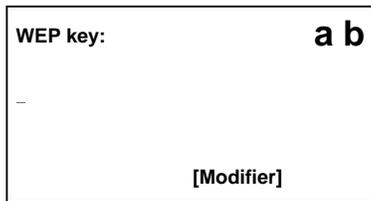
AES can be selected when WPA2-PSK is set.

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the encryption method desired.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Encryption menu reappears.

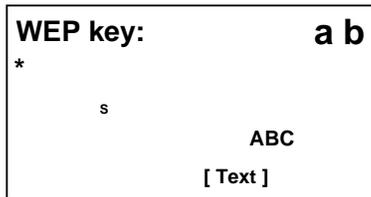
### WEP Key (WEP Key Settings)

This function registers the WEP key.

- 1 In the Encryption menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Key WEP.



2 Press [OK]. The WEP Key screen appears.



3 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The WEP Key input screen appears.

4 Enter the WEP key using the numeric keys.

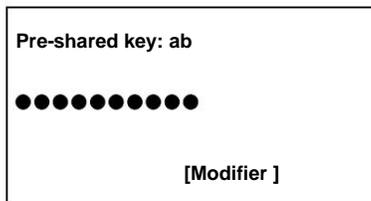


Note Up to 26 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

5 Press [OK]. The Encryption menu reappears.

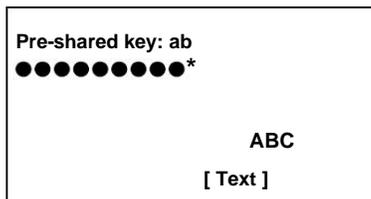
#### Pre-Shared Key (Pre-Shared Key Settings)

This function registers the pre-shared key.



1 In the Encryption menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Pre-shared key.

2 Press [OK]. The Pre-Shared Key screen appears.



3 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Pre-Shared Key entry screen appears.

4 Enter the pre-shared key using the numeric keys.

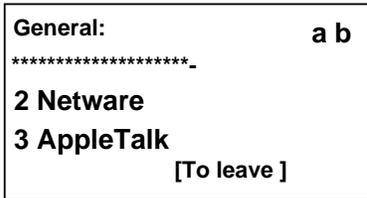


Note The number of characters is between 8 and 64. For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

5 Press [OK]. The Encryption menu reappears.

## General (General settings for the optional network interface kit)

This function selects general settings for the optional network interface kit (IB-50) or optional wireless network interface kit (IB-51).



**1** In the optional Network menu, press  $\tilde{y}$  or  $\tilde{y}$  to select General.

**2** Press [OK]. The General menu appears.

The following operations are possible:

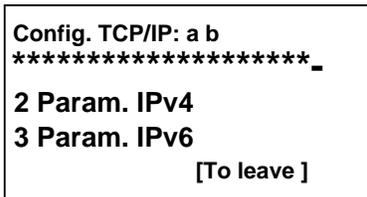
- Config. TCP/IP (TCP/IP settings for the network interface kit in option)...4-72
- Netware (NetWare Settings)...4-73
- AppleTalk (AppleTalk Settings)...4-73
- IPSec (IPSec Settings)...4-74
- LAN Interface (Local Area Network Interface Setting)...4-74
- Filter addr. MAC (MAC Address Filter Setting)...4-75
- Restart. network. (Restarting the optional network interface kit)...4-75

### config. TCP/IP (TCP/IP settings for the optional network interface kit)

This function selects the TCP/IP parameters.

The options available in the TCP/IP settings are as follows:

- TCP/IP (Enable/disable TCP/IP)
- Param. IPv4 (TCP / IP IPv4 parameters)
- Param. IPv6 (paramètres TCP/IP IPv6)



**1** In the General menu, press  $\tilde{y}$  or  $\tilde{y}$  to select Config. TCP/IP.

**2** Press [OK]. The Setup menu screen. TCP/IP is displayed.

#### TCP/IP (Enable/Disable TCP/IP)

Specifies whether TCP/IP is used.

The setting method is the same as the standard network settings. For more information, refer to TCP/IP (Enable/Disable TCP/IP) on page 4-56.

#### Param. IPv4 (TCP / IP IPv4 parameters)

Selects settings for TCP/IP (IPv4). The setting method is the same as the standard network settings. For more information, refer to Param. IPv4 (IPv4 TCP/IP Settings) on page 4-57.

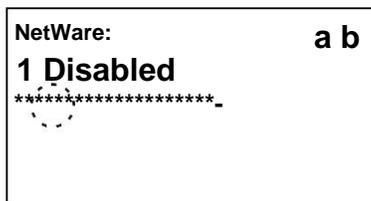
#### Param. IPv6 (paramètres TCP/IP IPv6)

Selects settings for TCP/IP (IPv6). The setting method is the same as the standard network settings. For more information, refer to Param. IPv6 (IPv6 TCP/IP Settings) on page 4-61.

## Netware (NetWare Settings)

NetWare is a server-specific PC-based network operating system. NetWare is a server-client system that works by installing the NetWare operating system on the server and dedicated client modules (NetWare clients) on client machines (working with MS-DOS, OS/2, Windows, etc.). The base network layer protocol used is NetWare's own Internetwork Packet eXchange (IPX)/Sequenced Packet eXchange (SPX), but the system also supports TCP/IP.

The distinguishing feature of the NetWare operating system is that it is server-specific, unlike general-purpose operating systems like Windows NT and UNIX. Only the minimum required for server operation can be run from the NetWare console on the server. Server and file management is basically done using management tools from the clients. Also, all drivers and protocol stacks exist in modules called NetWare Loadable Modules (NLMs) and the ability of NLMs to load and unload flexibly and dynamically is one of the main advantages of this system.



1 In the General menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Netware.

2 Press [OK]. The Netware screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether NetWare is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The Netware setting is set and the General menu reappears.

## AppleTalk (AppleTalk Settings)

AppleTalk is a communications protocol used primarily on Macintosh computers and also refers to Mac OS network functions.

AppleTalk assigns 24-bit network addresses (a 16-bit network section and an 8-bit node address) that are used to identify devices (computers, printers, etc.) on the network.

When powered on, a signal is broadcast over the network and machine addresses and names are assigned automatically. The default setting is Enabled.



1 In the General menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select AppleTalk.

2 Press [OK]. The AppleTalk screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether AppleTalk is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The AppleTalk setting is set and the General menu reappears.

## IPSec (IPSec Settings)

IPSec (IP Security Protocol) is a security protocol adopted as a standard by the IETF for authentication and encryption in the third network layer (IP layer).

It can be used with IPv4 and with IPv6.



Note IPv4 uses 32-bit addresses and IPv6 uses 128-bit addresses.



**1** In the General menu, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select IPSec.

**2** Press [OK]. The IPSec screen appears.

**3** Push  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select whether IPSec is enabled.

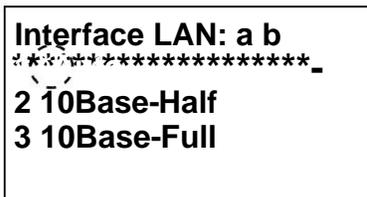
**4** Press [OK]. The IPSec setting is defined and the General menu appears again.

## LAN Interface (Local Area Network Interface Setting)

Specify the LAN interface settings to use. The default setting is Auto.



Note LAN Interface is displayed only when the optional network interface kit (IB-50) is installed.



**1** In the General menu, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Interface LAN.

**2** Press [OK]. The LAN Interface screen appears.

The available LAN interfaces are:

Auto

10Base-Half

10Base-Full

100Base-Half

100Base-Full

1000Base-T

**3** Push  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select the desired LAN interface.

**4** Press [OK]. The LAN interface is defined and the General menu appears again.

## Filter addr. MAC (MAC address filter setting)

This function defines whether or not to enable MAC address filtering.



Note Detailed settings for MAC address filtering are selected using the optional network interface kit utility software.

```
filter adr. MAC: ab
*****_
2 Enabled
```

- 1 In the General menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Filter addr. MAC.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Addr Filter screen appears. MAC is displayed.

- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether MAC address filtering is activated.

- 4 Press [OK]. The MAC address filtering setting is defined and the General menu reappears.

## Restart network. (Optional network interface kit restart)

After setting all network parameters, restart the network card of the machine. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account.

```
To restart.
Are you sure ?

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
```

- 1 In the General menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Restart network.
- 2 Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

- 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The Restarting... message appears and the network is restarted.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the General menu without restarting the network.

## Communication (Selecting the network interface to use)

Client functions such as network authentication and reference of user information via LDAP do not only work with the selected interface. This function is mainly used for network system administrator. For more information on each function, refer to the Command Center RX User Guide and the IB-50/IB-51 User's Manual.



Note Communication is only displayed on network-enabled models.

```
Communication: a b
*****_
2 Network optional
```

- 1 In the optional Network menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Communication.

- 2 Press [OK]. The Communication screen appears.

**3 Press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select the desired network.**

Standard network: standard network interface on the printer

Optional network: optional network interface kit

**4 Press [OK]. The network is set and the optional Network menu reappears.**

## Device common (Selection/Setting of common peripherals)

Selects/sets all functions of this printer.

The available Common Devices options are as follows:

- Language (Selecting the message language)...4-77
- Def. screen(box) (Document box default screen settings)...4-78
- Date Setting (Date and Time Settings)...4-79
- Alarm (Alarm (Buzzer) Settings)...4-82
- RAM Disk Settings (RAM Disk Usage)...4-84
- Format SSD (SSD formatting)...4-86
- Format SD card (Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card)...4-86
- Lumin. poster. (screen luminance parameter) ... 4-87
- Backlight. Screen (Screen backlight setting)...4-87
- Error Handling (Error Detection Settings)...4-88
- Param. every time (Paramètres du tempusateur)...4-90
- USB Keyboard Type (USB Keyboard Type Selection)...4-97
- Toner Alert Level (Alert level setting for adding toner)...4-97

**IMPORTANT** Def. screen(box), Format SSD and Format SD card are only displayed if the corresponding option is installed.

```

Device common: ab
*****_
2 Def. screen(box)
3 Definition date
      [ To leave ]
  
```

- 1 Press [Menu].
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Device. common.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Device menu. common displays a list of available options.

## Language (Selecting the message language)

The procedure below allows you to select the language for displaying messages on the screen. As an option, it is also possible to install other languages. Ask your service technician for more information on this.

```

Language: *****_
2 German
3 French
  
```

- 1 In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Language.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Language screen appears and displays the list of languages.  
The available languages are:  
English  
German  
French  
Spanish  
Italian  
Dutch  
Russian  
Portuguese

The optional languages are:

Optional language	Screen
Turkish	Turkish
Greek	Greek
Polish	Polish
Czech	Česky
Hungarian	Hungarian
Finnish	Finland
Hebrew	עברית
Arab	عربي
Swedish	Swedish
Danish	Dansk
Norwegian	Norsk
Romanian	Română
Catalan	Catalan

If one of the optional languages is used, it is displayed instead of Português.

- 3 Press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select the desired language.
- 4 Press [OK]. The language is set and the Device menu. common is displayed again.

## Def. screen(box) (Document box default screen settings)

Select the screen to display when [Document Box] is pressed.



- 1 In the Device menu screen. common, press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Def. screen(box).
- 2 Press [OK]. The screen Def. screen(box) is displayed.
- 3 Press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Custom Box. or Box works as default screen.
- 4 Press [OK]. The default screen is set and the Device menu. common is displayed again.

## Date Setting (Date and Time Settings)

Enter the date and time.

**IMPORTANT** To change the date definition, the administrator login user name and password must be entered. For more information on administrator settings, refer to Administrator on page 4-120.

If the date or time is changed while using an application, the application can no longer be used.

Date and time settings include the following:

- Date (Date setting)...4-80
- Time (Time Setting)...4-80
- Date Format (Selecting the Date Format)...4-81
- Def. hor. (Time zone setting)...4-81
- Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time Setting)...4-82

**1** In the Device menu, common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Date Definition.

**2** Press [OK]. The login screen appears.



**Note** When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the Date Set menu screen is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[ Connexion ]

**3** With the Login User Name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

**4** Enter the User ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**5** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login Password entry field.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[ Connexion ]

Login mot passe: ab  
\*  
  
ABC  
[ Text ]

**6 Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.**

**Login nom utilis: O b**  
Admin  
Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_  
[ Connexion]

**7 Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.**



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

Definition date: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_  
2 Hour  
3 Data format  
[ To leave ]

**8 Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name of user login and login password are correct, the Set Date menu displays a list of available options.**

### Date (Date parameter)

Date: a b  
Month Day Year  
/04- / 04 / 2012  
(Fus.hor.:H.Est)

**1 In the Set Date menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Date.**

**2 Press [OK]. The Date screen appears.**

**3 Use the number keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the year, month and day.**

Use the  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  keys to move the cursor right and left.

**4 Press [OK]. The date is set and the Set date menu appears again.**

### Time (Time setting)

Hour: a b  
Hour Min. Second  
/11- : 45 : 50  
(Fus.hor.:H.Est)

**1 In the Set Date menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Time.**

**2 Press [OK]. The Time screen appears.**

- 3 Use the numeric keys or press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to set hours, minutes and seconds.  
Use the  $\dot{y}$  and  $\ddot{y}$  keys to move the cursor right and left.
- 4 Press [OK]. The time is set and the menu Set date appears again.

### Date format (Date format selection)

You can choose from three date formats.

```

Data format: ab
*****_
 \_/
 2 JJ/MM/AAAA
 3 AAAA/MM/JJ

```

- 1 In the Set Date menu, press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Date Format.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Date Format screen appears.

- 3 Press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select the desired date format.

The following date formats are available:

MM/JJ/AAAA

JJ/MM/AAAA

AAAA/MM/JJ

- 4 Press [OK]. The date format is set and the Date Set menu reappears.

### Def. hor. (Time zone setting)

Set the time zone relative to GMT.

```

Def. hor. zone: ab
@ -05:00 Bogota
*****_
 \ -04:30 Caracas

```

- 1 In the Set Date menu, press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Def. time zone..
- 2 Press [OK]. The screen Def. hor. is displayed.

- 3 Press  $\dot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select the location.

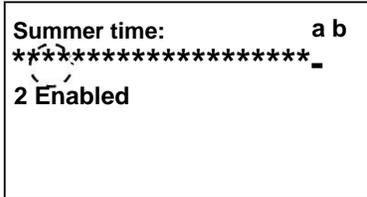
- 4 Press [OK]. The time zone is set and the menu Date Definition is displayed again.



**Note** If you select a region that does not apply daylight saving time, the daylight saving time setting is not displayed.

## Daylight saving time (Daylight saving time setting)

Set daylight saving time.



- 1 In the Date Set menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Daylight Saving Time.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Daylight Savings screen appears.

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether daylight saving time is enabled.
- 4 Press [OK]. Daylight saving time is set and the Date setting menu reappears.

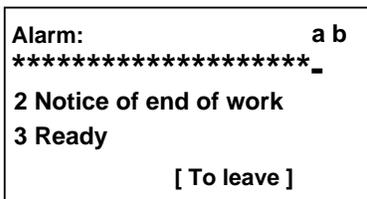
## Alarm (Alarm (Buzzer) Settings)

This feature uses tones to notify the user of printer operations and status. This setting is useful, for example, when the printer is not near the user.

The options available in Ringtone are as follows:

- Key Confirmation (Key Confirmation Tone Settings)...4-82
- JobEnd Notice (JobEnd Tone Settings)...4-83
- Ready (Ready End Tone Settings)...4-83
- Error (Error Tone Settings)...4-83
- Confirm. Keypad (Keypad Confirmation Tone Setting)...4-84

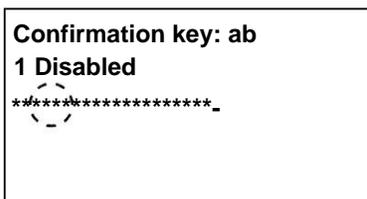
- 1 In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Alarm.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Alarm screen appears.



## Key confirmation (Key confirmation tone settings)

When On is selected for this option, a tone sounds each time a key is pressed. The default setting is Enabled.

- 1 In the Alarm menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Key Confirmation.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Key Confirmation screen appears.

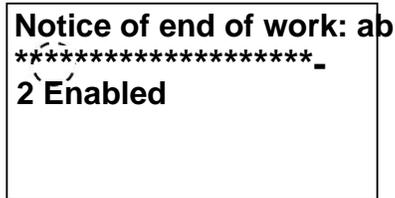


3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the confirmation tone button is activated.

4 Press [OK]. The key confirmation tone setting is set and the Alarm menu reappears.

### Job End Notice (Job End Tone Settings)

When On is selected for this option, a tone sounds when printing is complete. The default setting is Off.



1 In the Alarm menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Job Completion Notice.

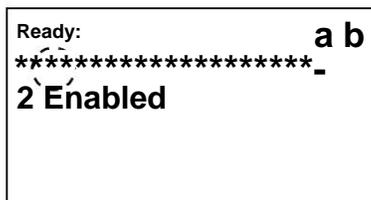
2 Press [OK]. The Job Completion Notice screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the end of job tone is activated.

4 Press [OK]. The end of work tone setting is set and the Alarm menu reappears.

### Ready (Ready End Tone Settings)

When On is selected for this option, a tone sounds when print preparation is complete. The default setting is Off.



1 In the Alarm menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Ready.

2 Press [OK]. The Ready screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the brew end tone is on.

4 Press [OK]. The prep end tone setting is set and the Alarm menu reappears.

### Error (Error Tone Settings)

When On is selected for this option, a tone sounds when a problem (such as paper out or paper jam) occurs during printing. The default setting is Enabled.

1 In the Alarm menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Error.



**2 Press [OK]. The Error screen appears.**

**3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the warning tone is activated.**

**4 Press [OK]. The warning tone setting is set and the Alarm menu reappears.**

### Confirm. keyboard (Keyboard confirmation tone setting)

When On is selected for this option, a tone sounds whenever a USB keyboard is used. The default setting is Off.



**1 In the Alarm menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Confirm. keyboard.**

**2 Press [OK]. The Confirm screen. keyboard is displayed.**

**3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the confirmation tone keyboard is enabled.**

**4 Press [OK]. The keypad confirmation tone setting is set and the Alarm menu reappears.**

### RAM Disk Settings (RAM Disk Usage)

RAM disk (or ramdisk) is a shared memory space within the printer's memory that is used to temporarily store print jobs. Multiple copies of a stored job can then be printed, reducing the time it takes to print the entire job. The operation of the RAM disk is similar to that of the SSD except that the data is only taken into account when the printer is powered on.

To use a RAM disk, activate it and enter the size you wish to allocate to it by following the procedure below. The maximum RAM disk size is calculated as follows:

When RAM disk is enabled = maximum RAM disk size is 16 MB (or 4 MB on FS-2100D) (without option).

When optional memory is installed = maximum RAM disk size is half of the total optional memory installed

By default, RAM disk is set to Enabled.

To activate the RAM disk in the printer memory, it is first necessary to make the RAM disk mode active, then, in a second step, to define the size of this disk (refer to the next section). The presence of a RAM disk in the printer allows you to perform the following operations.



**Note** The printer supports three types of storage device: SD/SDHC memory card, optional SSD (HD-6), and RAM disk. The SD/SDHC memory card and the optional SSD (HD-6) are installed in the slots provided for this purpose in the printer. The RAM disk is a part of the printer's memory specially reserved for this purpose.

**IMPORTANT** The RAM disk cannot be used when an optional SSD (HD-6) is installed.

A RAM disk only stores data temporarily. Indeed, the latter are erased when the printer is reset or powered off.

The RAM disk allows you to use some jobbox functions.

The space allocated to the RAM disk is taken from the printer memory made available to users. When the RAM disk size is too large, it may cause the printing speed to decrease or run out of memory problems.

The options available in RAM Disk Settings are as follows:

- RAM Disk Mode (RAM Disk Settings)...4-85
- Dim RAM Disk (Setting the size of the RAM disk)...4-85

1 In the Device menu, common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select RAM Disk Settings.

2 Press [OK]. The RAM Disk Settings menu screen is displayed.

```

Param dial RAM: ab
*****_
2 Dim RAM Disk

[ To leave ]

```

### RAM Disk Mode (RAM Disk Settings)

Set this parameter to Enabled to enable the RAM disk.

1 In the RAM Disk Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select RAM Disk Mode.

2 Press [OK]. The RAM Disk Mode screen appears.

```

Mode RAM Disk: a b
1 Disabled
*****_

```

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether the RAM disk is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The RAM Risk setting is set and the RAM Disk Settings menu reappears.

### Dim RAM Disk (Setting the size of the RAM disk)

Use this procedure to adjust the amount of memory used by the RAM disk.

1 In the RAM Disk Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select RAM Disk Size.

2 Press [OK]. The Dim RAM Disk screen appears.

```

Dim RAM Disk: a b
(1-16)
/*16-Mo

```

- Use the number keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to adjust the amount of memory to use for the RAM disk.

The maximum amount of memory that can be set varies depending on the total amount of printer memory.

- Press [OK]. The amount of memory used as RAM disk is memorized and the RAM disk setting menu is displayed new.

When you have finished setting, exit the menu and restart the printer. The selected settings are valid when the printer restarts.

## Format SSD (SSD formatting)

When an optional SSD (HD-6) is inserted into the printer for the first time, it must be formatted before use.

This menu only appears when the HD-6 is installed on the printer.



Note If the HD-6 is installed in the printer, the document box is available. Formatting deletes all existing data on a storage device, including a previously used HD-6. Formatting the HD-6 is done from the printer. If the HD-6 has not yet been formatted, the Attention light will flash and Format SSD will be displayed.

Use the procedure below to format the HD-6.

When a new HD-6 is inserted into the printer slot, Format Hard SSD appears on the screen.

- In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Format SSD.

- Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

Formatting. Are you sure ? z SSD  [ Yes ]                      [ Non ]
--

- Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). screen

Formatting... is displayed and formatting of the SSD begins. When formatting is complete, the screen saver is displayed new.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Device menu. common without formatting the SSD.

## Format SD card (Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card)

The printer is equipped with a slot for receiving an SD/SDHC memory card.

For details on handling the SD/SDHC memory card, see Installing and Formatting the SD/SDHC Memory Card on page A-9.

To be used by the printer, a new SD/SDHC memory card must absolutely be formatted. Formatting allows data to be written to the SD/SDHC memory card.

**IMPORTANT** Format SD card is displayed only when an SD/SDHC memory card is installed in the printer and protection is disabled.



Note Formatting deletes all existing data on a storage device, including a previously used SD/SDHC memory card.

Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card is done from the printer.

When a new SD/SDHC memory card is inserted into the printer slot, the message Format SD card appears on the screen.

```

Formatting.
Are you sure ?
z SD card

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
  
```

1 In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Format SD card.

2 Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The Format SD card... screen is displayed and formatting of the SD/SDHC memory card begins. When formatting is complete, the screen saver reappears.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Device menu. common without formatting the SD/SDHC card.

## Lumin. poster. (screen luminance parameter)

Sets the screen brightness.

```

Lumin. affich .: ab
1 + dark -2
2 + dark -1
*****_
 \ /
  
```

1 In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Lumin. poster ..

2 Press [OK]. The Bright screen. display appears and displays the brightness settings available.

The list displays the following brightness settings:

+ dark -2

+ dark -1

Normal 0

+ clair +1

+ clair +2

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired brightness.

4 Press [OK]. The brightness is set and the Device menu. common is displayed again.

## Backlight Screen (Screen backlight setting)

Set screen backlight.

```

Backlight ab- screen
*****_
 \ /
2 Disabled
3 Already selected
  
```

1 In the Device menu. common, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Backlight. Screen.

2 Press [OK]. The Backlight screen. Screen appears.

The list displays the following backlight settings:

Enabled (standard)

Disabled (no backlight)

Already selected (backlight turns on when key is pressed on control panel)



**Note** If Already Selected is selected, the backlight will turn off again when the panel is reset after the time set for AutoPanel Reset has elapsed. or when [Logout] is pressed.

**3** Push **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select the desired backlight setting.

**4** Press [OK]. The backlight setting is set and the Device menu common is displayed again.

## Error handling (Error detection settings)

The following procedure specifies settings for the detection methods used for duplex printing errors and for paper size and paper type errors when the paper source is fixed.

The options available in Error Handling are:

- DuplexPaperError (Duplex printing error detection)...4-88
- Paper Error (Detection settings for paper size and paper type errors when the paper source is fixed)...4-89
- MP Tray Empty (Warning when MP tray is empty)...4-89

**1** In the Device menu. common, press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Error handling.

**2** Press [OK]. The Error Handling menu is displayed.

```

Error handling: ab
*****_
2 Paper error
3 Bac MF vide
      [ To leave ]
  
```

## DuplexPaperError (Duplex printing error detected)

If the error detection function for duplex printing has been set to Show error and you try to print on a size and type of paper not available for this type of printing, the message Duplex Disabled error appears and printing stops.

To display mistake	• To print on one side of the paper only when this message is displayed, press [OK]. • Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.
Recto	• To print on one side of the paper.

**1** In the Error Handling menu, press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select ErrorPapRecVers.

**2** Press [OK]. The DuplexPaperError screen appears.

```

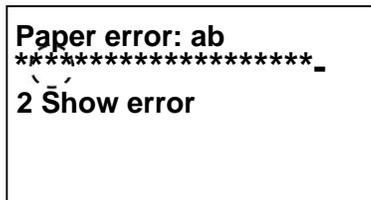
ErreurPapRecVers: a b
*****_
2 Show error
  
```

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Duplex paper error handling setting.

4 Press [OK]. Duplex paper error handling is defined and the Error Handling menu reappears.

### Paper Error (Detection settings for paper size and type errors when the paper source is fixed)

Set this option to Continue to continue printing even if the specified paper size or type is different from the fixed paper source, or set this option to Display Error to display the paper feed error.



1 In the Error Handling menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Paper Error.

2 Press [OK]. The Paper Error screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the paper error handling setting.

4 Press [OK]. Paper error handling is defined and the Error Handling menu is displayed again.

### MP tray empty (Warning when MP tray is empty)

Set this setting to On to display an error when the MP tray is configured as the default paper source and there is no paper in the MP tray, or set it to Off to not display an error.

The On setting allows the paper empty message to appear when the MP tray is empty.



1 In the Error Management menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Empty MP Tray.

2 Press [OK]. The MP Tray Empty screen appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the setting for the display of the empty paper message.

4 Press [OK]. The MP Tray Empty display is set and the menu Error Handling is displayed again.

## Param. every time (Paramètres du temporateur)

The following procedure specifies timer-related settings such as auto paper feed timeout and auto sleep timeout settings.

**IMPORTANT** To change the timeout definition, the administrator login user name and password must be entered. For more information on administrator settings, refer to Administrator on page 4-120.

The options available in Param. tempor. are the following :

- Reset AutoPann. (Panel Auto-Restore Settings)...4-91
- Timer. reset. (Setting Panel Restore Timer)...4-92
- Sleep Level Param (sleep timeout delay)...4-92
- Timer. Sleep (Sleep Timeout)...4-94
- Stopping Rule (stopping rule setting)...4-94
- Timer. shutdown (shutdown timer settings)...4-95
- Auto Error Clear (Automatic Error Correction)...4-95
- Error Corr. Temp. (Setting the recovery time after error correction)...4-96
- Form Feed Timeout (Automatic Paper Feed Timeout)...4-97

**1** In the Device menu. common, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Settings. temporary..

**2** Press **[OK]**. The login screen appears.



**Note** When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the Settings menu screen is not displayed. tempor. is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[ Connexion]

**3** With the Login User Name input field selected, press **[OK]**. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC  
[ Text ]

**4** Enter the User ID using the numeric keys, then press **[OK]**. The login screen reappears.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**5** Push **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select the Login Password entry field.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[ Connexion]

```

Login mot passe: ab
*
                                     ABC
                               [ Text ]

```

**6** Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

```

Login nom utilis: O b
Admin
Login to pass:
/*****_
                               [ Connexion]

```

**7** Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

```

Param. time.: ab
*****_
2 Tempo. réinit.
3 Sleep Level Settings
                               [ To leave ]

```

**8** Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name of user login and login password are correct, the Param. tempor. displays a list of available options.

### Reset AutoPann. (Panel auto-recover settings)

The panel's auto-restore function automatically restores the default settings if the panel is not used for a set time. The default setting is Enabled.

To set the auto panel reset delay, see Tempo. reset. (Setting the Panel Restore Timer) on page 4-92.

**1** In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Reset AutoPann..

**2** Press [OK]. The AutoPann.Reset screen appears. is displayed.

```

Réinit.AutoPann .: ab
1 Disabled
*****_
  _/

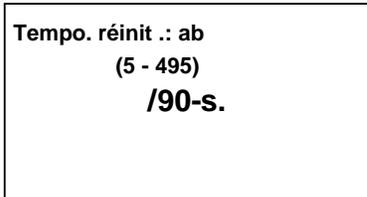
```

**3** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether Auto Panel Reset is enabled.

**4** Press [OK]. The automatic reset setting of the panel is defined and the Param. tempor. appears again.

### Tempo. reset. (Panel Restore Timer Setting)

When Reset AutoPann. is set to Enabled, this option defines the panel's automatic recovery time after the last user action. The default setting is 90 seconds.



Tempo. réinit .: ab  
(5 - 495)  
/90-s.

- 1 In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Timer. reset..
- 2 Press [OK]. The Temp screen. reset. is displayed.

- 3 Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set panel restore timer.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Panel Reset Delay setting is stored and the Param. tempor. appears again.

### Sleep Level Param (sleep timeout delay)

There are two sleep modes with different sleep levels: Quick Resume and Power Saver.

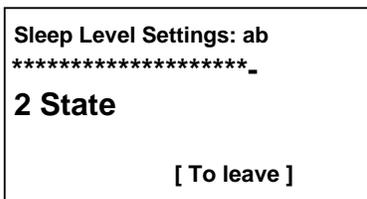
Quick Recovery Mode: Resuming from sleep mode is faster than when using Power Saver mode.

Energy Saver Mode: Reduces energy consumption more than Quick Recovery Mode. With Energy Saver mode, it is possible to choose whether to activate Energy Saver mode individually for each function.



**Note** For more information on Quick Recovery mode and Energy Saver mode, refer to Energy Saver Function on page 2-22.

The Standby Level Settings menu is not displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) has been installed

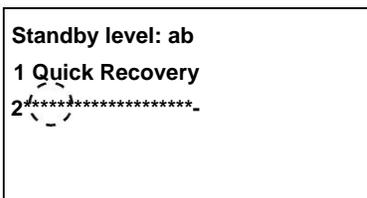


Sleep Level Settings: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_

**2 State**

[ To leave ]

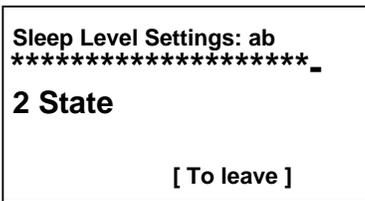
- 1 In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Standby Level Settings.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Standby Level Settings menu screen is displayed.



Standby level: ab

1 Quick Recovery  
2\*\*\*\*\*\_

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Sleep Level.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Sleep Level screen appears.
- 5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Quick Recovery or Power Saver.



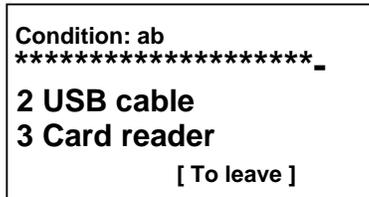
**6** Press [OK]. The sleep level is set and the Param menu standby level is displayed again.

When Energy Saver is set, then proceed to select whether or not to use Energy Saver mode for each function.

**7** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Status.



Note Status is displayed only when Power Saver is set.



**8** Press [OK]. The Status menu screen is displayed.

Then set whether or not to use Power Save mode for each function.

Element	Default value
Network (network interface settings)	Enabled
USB cable (USB interface settings)	Enabled
Card reader (ID card reader settings)	Enabled
RAM disk (RAM disk mode settings)	Disabled
Parallel Cable (Parallel Interface Settings)	Enabled



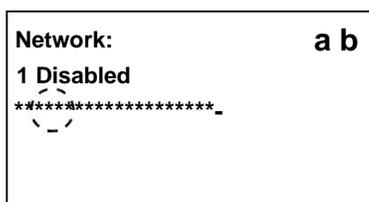
Note Network and RAM Disk are displayed only on network-enabled models.

Card reader is displayed only when the card reader function has been activated.

Parallel Cable is displayed only when the optional Parallel Interface Kit (IB-32) is installed.

**9** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the function to configure.

**10** Press [OK]. The selected function screen is displayed.



**11** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether or not to use Energy Saver mode. Select On to set power saving mode.

**12** Press [OK]. Set Energy Saver mode for each function. The Status menu reappears.



Note Repeat steps 9 to 12 to set Power Save mode for another function.

## Tempor. Sleep (Sleep Timeout)

It is possible to set the timeout period after which, if no data is received, the printer enters Auto Sleep mode. The printer resumes normal operation when: it receives a print job, the [OK] key is pressed, or one of the outer covers is open. The default duration is 1 minute.

Over time. willing: ab  
(1 - 240)  
/\*1-min.

- 1 In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Timer. standby.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Timeout screen. standby is displayed.
- 3 Use the numeric keys or  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the sleep timer.
- 4 Press [OK]. The sleep timer setting is stored and the Param. tempor. appears again.

## Stopping rule (stopping rule parameter)

The shutdown rule is used to prevent the machine from automatically powering off when it is in certain states or when certain settings are enabled. The rules that can be configured and their default settings are:

Element	Default value		
	FS-2100D		FS-2100DN/FS-4100DN/ FS-4200DN/FS-4300DN
	For EU countries†	Countries outside the EU	
Network (network interface settings)	-	-	Disabled
USB cable (USB interface settings)	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled
USB Host (USB memory location settings)	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled
RAM disk (disk mode settings RAM)††	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Network (optional network interface kit (NIC) setting)	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
Parallel I/F (parallel interface setting) Enabled		Disabled	Disabled

† Default is not displayed and customized.

†† If the Shutdown Rule is already set to Enabled, the machine will power off and all data stored on the disk RAM are removed.



**Note** When On is set, the machine automatically turns off.

Network is only displayed on network compatible models.

NIC is displayed only when the optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB 51) has been installed

Parallel I/F is displayed only when the optional parallel interface kit (IB-32) is installed.

```

Stopping rule: ab
*****_
2 USB cable
3 USB Host
      [ To leave ]

```

```

Network: *****_
      a b
2 Enabled

```

1 In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Stopping Rule.

2 Press [OK]. The Shutdown Rule menu appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the condition to configure.

4 Press [OK]. The selected condition screen is displayed.

5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether or not the machine should turn off.

6 Press [OK]. Configure power off. The Rule menu stop is displayed again.



**Note** Repeat steps 3 to 6 to configure another condition.

### Tempo. shutdown (shutdown timer settings)

The delay before power off can be configured. The default setting is 1 hour.

```

Tempo. stop: ab
*****_
      a b
2 2 hours
3 3 hours

```

1 In the Param. timer, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Timer. stop.

2 Press [OK]. The Time menu. stop is displayed.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the time before auto power off. The times that can be set are 1 hour, 2 hours, 3 hours, 4 hours, 5 hours, 6 hours, 9 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 4 days, 5 days, 6 days and 1 week. .

4 Press [OK]. Set the delay before power off. the Time menu. stop is displayed again.

### Auto Error Corr. (Automatic Error Correction)

When an error that does not prevent printing from continuing occurs, the data received later is automatically printed after a certain delay.

Example: If a printer is used as a network printer and a user causes the errors below, the data sent by the next user will still be printed after a preset delay. By default, this option is Off (automatic error correction disabled).

Errors that can be corrected automatically are:

Cap. print exceeded.

KPDL error.

SSD error.

RAM disk error.

SD card error.

Invalid account ID.

Account error.

Print rect. towards. impossible on this paper

Limit exceeded counted. works.

No multi copies.

USB memory error.

Limited by job accounting.

Unstored work.

For the procedure for setting the recovery time after automatic error recovery, refer to Error Recovery Time (Setting the recovery time after error recovery) on page 4-96.



Corr.Error auto: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_  
2 Enabled

**1** In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to  
select Auto Error Clear.

**2** Press [OK]. The Auto Error Clear screen appears.

**3** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether automatic correction  
errors is enabled.

**4** Press [OK]. The automatic error correction setting is set and the Param. tempor.  
appears again.

### Temp.Corr.Error (Defining the recovery delay after correcting an error)

If Auto Error Clear is set to On and a non-fatal error (an error that allows printing to continue) occurs, this setting specifies the time to recover from the error and resume printing. The default setting is 30 seconds.



Temp.Corr.Error: ab  
(5 - 495)  
/\*30-s.

**1** In the Param. timer, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to  
select Temp.Corr.Error.

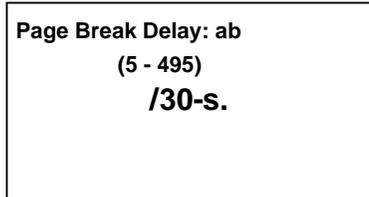
**2** Press [OK]. The Temp.Corr.Error screen appears.

**3** Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the restore time.

**4** Press [OK]. The reset time setting is stored and the Param. tempor.  
appears again.

## Form Feed Timeout (Automatic Paper Feed Timeout)

When receiving print data from the computer, the machine may sometimes wait if there is no information that the last page has no more data to print. After the preset time has elapsed, the machine automatically prints the paper. The default setting is 30 seconds.



- 1 In the Param. timer, press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Page Break Delay.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Page Break Delay screen appears.

3 Use the numeric keys or press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to set the page break delay.

4 Press [OK]. The time delay setting of automatic paper feed is memorized and the Param. tempor. appears again.

## USB keyboard type (USB keyboard type selection)

Select the type of USB keyboard to use.



- 1 In the Device menu. common, press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select USB Keyboard Type.
- 2 Press [OK]. The USB Keyboard Type screen appears.

The USB keyboard types available are:

- US
- Europe US
- France
- Germany

3 Press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select the type of USB keyboard wish.

4 Press [OK]. The USB keyboard type is set and the Device menu. common is displayed again.

## Toner Alert Level (Alert level setting for adding toner)

This feature sets the alert level displayed for adding toner on the Status Monitor.

- 1 In the Device menu. common, press **Ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Toner Alert Level.

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[Connexion]

## 2 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.



Note When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the Toner Alert Level menu screen is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

## 3 With the Login User Name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

## 4 Enter the User ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



Note The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

## 5 Push $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select the Login Password entry field.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[Connexion]

## 6 Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

Login mot passe: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

## 7 Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



Note The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[Connexion]

## 8 Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name

The entered login user name and login password are correct, the Toner Alert Level menu screen is displayed.

Level alert tones: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_

2 Level alert tones

[ To leave ]



## Security (Security Function Settings)

Security functions can be set to protect printer operation and print data.

**IMPORTANT** To change the security feature settings, the administrator login user name and password must be entered. For more information on administrator settings, refer to Administrator on page 4-120.

The options available in Security are:

- Network Security (Network Security Settings)...4-101
- Interf Block Conf (External Interface Blocking Setting)...4-108
- Security Level...4-110
- Security. Data (Data Security Setting)...4-110



Note The Secu. data is used with the optional Data Security Kit (E). For details, refer to the Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide.

**Login nom utilis: O b**  
 /\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[Connexion]

Login nom utilis: ab

\*

ABC

[ Text ]

**Login nom utilis: O b**  
 Admin

Login to pass:

/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[Connexion]

### 1 Press [Menu].

2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Security.

3 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.



#### Note When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the Security menu screen is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when connecting without the administrator status. Reconnect as administrator.

4 With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

5 Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



#### Note The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login input field password.

```

Login mot passe: ab *

                                ABC
                                [ Text ]
  
```

**7** Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

```

Login nom utilis: O b
Admin
Login mot passe: /
***** _

                                [Connexion]
  
```

**8** Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

```

Security:                               a b
***** _

2 Conf bloc interface
3 Security level

                                [ To leave ]
  
```

**9** Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name The entered login user name and login password are correct, the Security menu is displayed.

## Network Security (Network Security Settings)

Use this procedure to specify security settings for each of the network protocols used.

**IMPORTANT** Check the selection of network settings with your network administrator.

The options available in Network Security are as follows:

- WSD Printing (WSD Print Setting)...4-102 • Enhanced WSD (Enhanced WSD Setting)...4-102 • EnhancedWSD(SSL) (Enhanced WSD (SSL) Setting)...4-102 • IPP (IPP Settings)...4-103
- Config. SSL (SSL Server Settings)...4-103 • IPSec (IPSec Settings)...4-106 • ThinPrint (ThinPrint Setting)...4-106 • LAN Interface (Local Area Network Interface Setting)... 4-107

**1** In the Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Network security.

**2** Press [OK]. The Network Security menu appears.

```

Network security: ab
***** _

2 Enhanced WSD
3 EnhancedWSD(SSL)

                                [ To leave ]
  
```

### WSD Print (WSD Print Setting)

Select whether or not to use WSD printing. The default setting is Enabled.

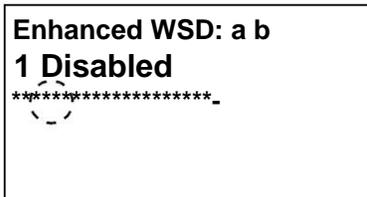


- 1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select WSD Print.
- 2 Press [OK]. The WSD Print screen appears.

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether WSD printing is activated.
- 4 Press [OK]. The WSD print setting is set and the Network Security menu reappears.

### Enhanced WSD (Parameter Enhanced WSD)

Select whether to use our proprietary web services. The network driver uses this Enhanced WSD Web Service. The default setting is Enabled.



- 1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Enhanced WSD.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Enhanced WSD screen appears.

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether Enhanced WSD is enabled.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Enhanced WSD setting is set and the menu Network Security is displayed again.

### EnhancedWSD(SSL) (paramètre Enhanced WSD (SSL))

Select whether to use our proprietary web services over SSL. SSL must be set to Enabled in SSL (SSL Server Settings) on page 4-103. The default setting is Enabled.



- 1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EnhancedWSD(SSL).
- 2 Press [OK]. The EnhancedWSD(SSL) screen appears.

- 3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether Enhanced WSD (SSL) is activated.

- 4 Press [OK]. The Enhanced WSD (SSL) setting is set and the Network Security menu reappears.

## IPP (IPP Settings)

IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a standard that uses TCP/IP networks such as the Internet to allow print jobs to be sent between remote computers and printers.

IPP is an extension of the HTTP protocol used to display websites and it allows router printing to remote printers. It also supports HTTP authentication mechanisms with SSL client and server authentication, as well as encryption. The default setting is Off.

- 1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select IPP.

- 2 Press [OK]. The IPP screen appears.



- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether IPP is enabled.

- 4 Press [OK]. The IPP setting is set and the Network Security menu reappears.

## config. SSL (SSL Server Settings)

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) refers to a protocol used to encrypt information sent and received over a network.

SSL can currently be used to encrypt data like WWW or FTP files widely used on the Internet so that privacy related information, credit card numbers, company secrets and other confidential information can be sent and received safely.

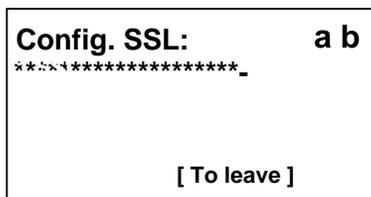
SSL servers use this protocol to authenticate servers and clients.

The options available in Config. SSL are as follows:

- SSL (SSL Server Settings)...4-103
- IPP over SSL (Paramètres IPP over SSL Serveur SSL)...4-105
- HTTPS (HTTPS SSL Server Settings)...4-105

- 1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Config. SSL.

- 2 Press [OK]. The Setup menu screen. SSL is displayed.



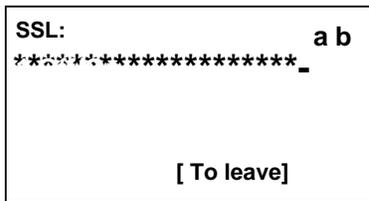
## SSL (SSL Server Settings)

Select SSL server settings.

The options available in SSL are:

- Off/On (SSL Operation Settings)...4-104
- Encryption (Encryption Settings)...4-104

- 1 In the Setup menu. SSL, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select SSL.



2 Press [OK]. The SSL menu appears.

#### Off/On (SSL Operation Settings)

Select whether or not to use the SSL server. The default setting is Off.

1 In the SSL menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Off/Walking.

2 Press [OK]. The Off/On screen appears.



3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether or not to use the server SSL.

4 Press [OK]. The SSL server setting is set and the menu SSL is displayed again.

#### Encryption (Encryption settings)

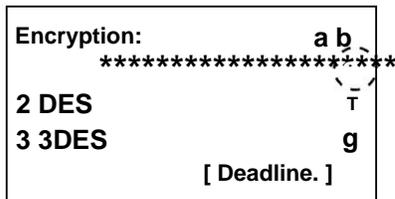
Select the encryption method used on the SSL server.



Note This parameter is only displayed when Config. SSL (SSL Server Settings) on page 4-103 is set to Enabled.

1 In the SSL menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Encryption.

2 Press [OK]. The Encryption screen appears.



3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the encryption method to use, then press [OK].

The options available in Encryption are: • AES (AES SSL Server Settings)

AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) was developed to replace DES as the encryption standard since the security of DES was outdated. AES is a block cipher system that uses 128-bit blocks and an SPN structure (a typical structure for repeated encryption) with three key lengths to choose from: 128, 192, and 256 bits.

## • OF THE

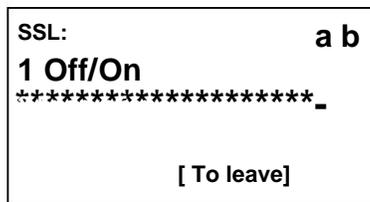
DES (Data Encryption Standard) is a typical symmetric-key encryption algorithm that divides data into 64-bit blocks and then encrypts each block using a 56-bit key.

**IMPORTANT** We speak of symmetric key encryption because the same key is used for encryption and decryption. The same key is used in both directions when exchanging encrypted data. Accordingly, in order to avoid disclosure of the key, the transfer and storage of the key must be strictly controlled.

## • 3DES

3DES (Triple Data Encryption Standard) is a high level of encryption in which the DES encryption is tripled.

A check mark (g) appears to the right of the selected encryption method.



## 4 After completing the selection, press [Finish]

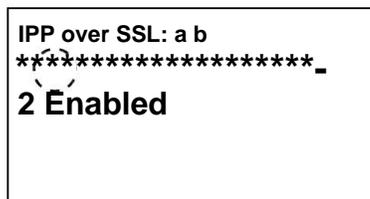
([Right Select]). The selected encryption method is set and the SSL menu reappears.

**IPP over SSL (Paramètres IPP over SSL Serveur SSL)**

IPP over SSL is an encryption function that uses SSL for communications between users and servers in network printing. To use IPP over SSL, both server and client must support this protocol. The default setting is Off.

1 In the Setup menu. SSL, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select IPP over SSL.

2 Press [OK]. The IPP over SSL screen appears.



3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether IPP over SSL is enabled.

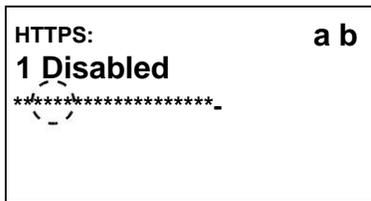
4 Press [OK]. The IPP over SSL setting is set and the menu config. SSL is displayed again.

**HTTPS (HTTPS SSL Server Settings)**

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol Secure) is a protocol that adds SSL data encryption, message authentication, and a digital signature feature to the HTTP protocol used to transfer data between WWW servers and clients.

S-HTTP is a similar protocol, but HTTPS is different because it uses SSL. The default setting is Enabled.

1 In the Setup menu. SSL, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select HTTPS.



2 Press [OK]. The HTTPS screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether HTTPS is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The HTTPS setting is set and the menu config. SSL is displayed again.

### IPSec (IPSec Settings)

IPSec (IP Security Protocol) is a security protocol adopted as a standard by the IETF for authentication and encryption in the third network layer (IP layer).

It can be used with IPv4 and with IPv6.



Note IPv4 uses 32-bit addresses and IPv6 uses 128-bit addresses.

The default setting is Off.



1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select IPSec.

2 Press [OK]. The IPSec screen appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether IPSec is enabled.

4 Press [OK]. The IPSec setting is set and the Network Security menu reappears.

### ThinPrint (paramètre ThinPrint)

Select communication or not with ThinPrint. SSL settings can also be selected. The default setting is Enabled.



Note ThinPrint is only displayed when the optional UG-33 has been enabled.



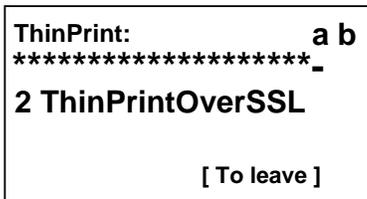
1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select ThinPrint.

2 Press [OK]. The ThinPrint menu appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Off/On.



4 Press [OK]. The Off/On screen appears.



5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether ThinPrint is enabled.

6 Press [OK]. ThinPrint is set and the ThinPrint menu appears again.

When ThinPrint is set to Enabled, the settings for ThinPrintOverSSL are displayed and must then be configured.



7 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select ThinPrintOverSSL.

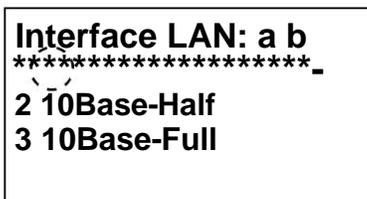
8 Press [OK]. The ThinPrintOverSSL screen appears.

9 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether ThinPrintOverSSL is activated.

10 Press [OK]. ThinPrint is set and the ThinPrint menu appears again.

## LAN Interface (Local Area Network Interface Setting)

Specify the LAN interface settings to use. The default setting is Auto.



1 In the Network Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select LAN Interface.

2 Press [OK]. The LAN Interface screen appears.

The available LAN interfaces are:

Auto  
10Base-Half  
10Base-Full  
100Base-Half  
100Base-Full  
1000Base-T

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired LAN interface.

4 Press [OK]. The LAN interface is set and the Security menu network is displayed again.

## Interf block conf (External interface blocking parameter)

It is possible to use this option to block and therefore protect the interface.

The options available in Interf Block Conf are as follows:

- USB Host (USB Port Setting)...4-108
- USB Device (USB Interface Settings)...4-108
- Option I/F (optional network interface settings)...4-109
- Parallel I/F (parallel interface setting)...4-109
- USB Storage (USB Memory Settings)...4-109

```

Conf bloc interf: ab
*****_
2 USB device
3 Interface opt.
      [ To leave ]
  
```

- 1 In the Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Conf bloc interf.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Interface Block Setup menu screen is displayed.

### USB Host (USB Port Setting)

This procedure blocks and protects the USB port (USB host). The default setting is Unlock.

```

USB Host: a b
*****_
2 Lock
  
```

- 1 In the Interface Block Conf menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select USB Host.
- 2 Press [OK]. The USB Host screen appears.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether to block and protect or not the USB host.
- 4 Press [OK]. The USB Host setting is set and the Interface Block Setup menu reappears.

### USB Device (USB Interface Settings)

This procedure blocks and protects the USB interface. The default setting is Unlock.

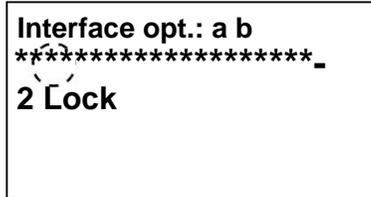
```

USB Device: a b
*****_
2 Lock
  
```

- 1 In the Interf block conf menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select USB Device.
- 2 Press [OK]. The USB Device screen appears.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether to block and protect or not the USB device.
- 4 Press [OK]. The USB device setting is defined and the Interface Block Setup menu reappears.

## I/F option (optional network interface settings)

This procedure blocks and protects the optional network interface. The default setting is Unlock.



1 In the Interf block conf menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Opt. interface.

2 Press [OK]. The Interface opt. appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether or not to block and protect the optional network interface.

4 Press [OK]. The optional interface setting is set and the Interface Block Setup menu reappears.

## Parallel I/F (parameter of parallel interface)

This procedure blocks and protects the parallel interface. The default setting is Unlock.



1 In the I/F Block Setup menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Parallel I/F.

2 Press [OK]. The Parallel I/F screen appears.

3 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether or not to block and protect the optional parallel interface.

4 Press [OK]. The parallel interface setting is defined and the Interface Block Setup menu reappears.

## USB storage (USB memory settings)

This procedure blocks and protects USB storage (USB memory). The default setting is Unlock.



1 In the Interface Block Setup menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select USB Storage.

2 Press [OK]. The USB Storage screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select whether to block and protect or not USB memory.

4 Press [OK]. The USB memory setting is defined and the Interf Block Setup menu reappears.

## Security level

The security level setting is a menu option primarily used by service personnel for maintenance work. Customers do not need to use this menu.

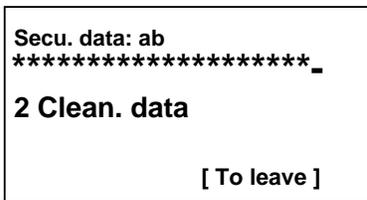
### Secu. Data (Data Security Setting)

This feature allows you to change the security password, initialize the optional SSD (HD-6), and wipe stored data.

- Initialize. SSD (SSD initialization parameter)...4-110
- Clean. data (Cleaning up stored data)...4-112



Note Initialis. SSD is displayed only when the optional Data Security Kit is installed on the printer.



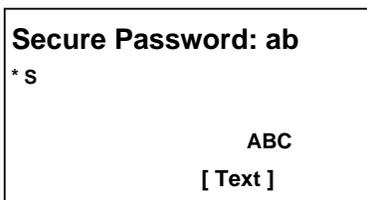
**1** In the Security menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Secu. data.

**2** Press [OK]. The Safety menu. data is displayed.

### Initialize SSD (SSD initialization parameter)

This function allows you to change the security password and initialize the optional SSD (HD-6).

- Secure password. (Change Security Password)...4-111
- Initialization (initialization on optional SSD)...4-111



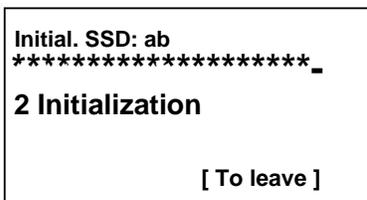
**1** In the Security menu. data, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Initialize. SSD.

**2** Press [OK]. The Secure Password entry screen. is displayed.

**3** Enter the security password using the numeric keys.



Note The initial setting for the security password is "00000". For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.



**4** Press [OK]. If the entered security password is correct, the Initialis menu screen. SSD is displayed. If the entered security password is incorrect, Incorr. appears and the Secure Password screen appears. appears again. Enter the correct security password.

**Mt safe pass. (Change security password)**

Change security password.

- 1 In the Initialize menu. SSD, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Secure Password.
- 2 Press [OK]. The New Password entry screen appears.

- 3 Enter the new security password using the number keys.



Note The security password must be between 6 and 16 characters. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

- 4 Press [OK]. The entry screen Conf. password is displayed.

- 5 To confirm, re-enter the security password to be saved. Enter the new security password using the number keys.
- 6 Press [OK]. If the security password matches, the password is changed with the new password and the Initialis menu. SSD is displayed again.

If the password does not match, Password incorrect. is displayed and the New Password entry screen is displayed again. Re-enter the new security password.

**Initialization (initialization on SSD optional)**

Overwrite all data stored on the optional SSD (HD-6) when disposing of the printer.

**IMPORTANT** If the machine is unintentionally powered off during initialization, the HD-6 may crash or initialization may fail.

- 1 In the Initialize menu. SSD, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Initialization.
- 2 Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.
- 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The printer automatically restarts, and then initialization starts.  
If initialization is not required, press [No] ([Right Select]). The Initialis menu. SSD is displayed again.

Task completed.  
Power off app.  
then powered on.

- 4 When initialization is complete Task complete. is displayed.  
Turn the device off and then on again.

### Clean. data (Cleaning of stored data)

This function completely deletes the address information registered on the machine and the stored image data.

**IMPORTANT** This operation takes about 30 minutes when an optional SSD (HD-6) is installed and a few minutes when no SSD (HD-6) is installed.

The operation can be performed only by logging in with machine administrator rights.

It is not possible to cancel the operation once started.

Remove the USB cable and network cable, etc. before performing this operation.

Do not turn off the machine while deletion is in progress. If the machine is turned off during deletion, deletion will be performed automatically when the machine is turned on again, but complete operation cannot be guaranteed.

The deleted data are as follows.

- Working parameters
- Machine settings (network settings)
- Certificates
- User settings (user list, document boxes)
- Machine administration (job logs, job accounting)



Note The status of the data cleansing implementation can be checked on the status page. For more information, see Status Page (Printing a Printer Status Page) on page 4-12.

Clean data.  
Are you sure ?  
\* This operation  
will last a while.  
[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]

- 1 In the Security menu. data, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Clean. data.
- 2 Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.
- 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Cleaned. Datas. is displayed and data cleaning begins.



Note When an optional SSD (HD-6) is installed, the printer automatically restarts before data overwrite.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Security menu. data without cleaning the data.

Clean. Datas.  
**Me. Prince. : Deadline**  
**Me. Internal: Deadline**  
  
[ OK ]

- 4 When data cleaning is complete Done. is displayed.  
Press [OK] ([right select]) and turn off the machine.



Note You can check the result of data cleansing on the status page. For more information, see Status Page (Printing a Printer Status Page) on page 4-12.

## Username/JobAccount (User login setting/Job accounting setting)

User login administration and job accounting can be set on this machine.

Username/JobAccount includes the following elements.

- ParamLogin util (User login parameter)...4-113
- Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings)...4-125

### ParamLogin util (User login parameter)

User login administration is a function for specifying users who can use the machine and managing users. If the login user name and password match those registered, the user is authenticated and can log in to the machine.

Users are classified as "User", "Administrator" or "Device administrator" according to their rights. Setting security levels can only be done by a device administrator.

Authentication for this machine uses a network authentication server. User registration is performed on the server.

In the list of local users for the machine, 1 user with administrator rights and 1 user with device administrator rights are registered. To edit the administrator information, refer to Administrator on page 4-120.

When the card authentication kit is activated, it is possible to log in using an ID card.

#### First administration of user logins

Follow the steps below when first administering user logins.

Enable user login administration. (page 4-115)

ÿ

Add a user on the network server.

ÿ

Press Logout. (page 4-118)

ÿ

The registered user logs in to perform the operations. (page 4-118)

1 Press [Menu].

2 Press ÿ or ÿ to select UserName/JobAccount.

3 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.



Note When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the UserName/CptaJob is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

**Login nom utilis: O b**  
 /\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[Connexion]

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*  
  
ABC  
[ Text ]

- 4 With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

- 5 Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



Note The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

- 6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login input field password.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin  
Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_  
[Connexion]

- 7 Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

Login mot passe: ab  
\*  
  
ABC  
[ Text ]

- 8 Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



Note The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

- 9 Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name The login user name and login password entered are correct, the UserName/JobAccount menu screen is displayed.

NomUtil / CptaTrav: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_  
2 Job Counter Settings  
[ To leave ]

- 10 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select User Login Param.

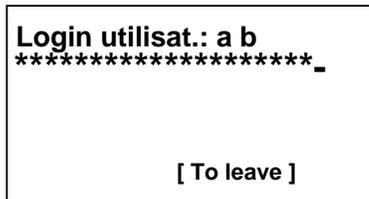
- 11 Press [OK]. The ParamLogin util menu is displayed.

ParamLogin util: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_  
2 List useful places  
[ To leave ]

## User Login

This function activates the administration of user connections. This function enables/disables the administration of user connections and defines the authentication network server.

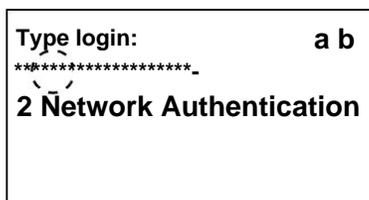
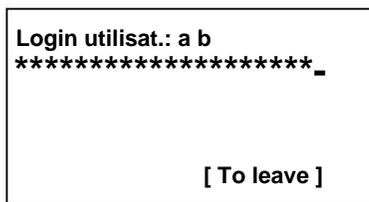
- 1 In the ParamLogin User menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select User Login.
- 2 Press [OK]. The User Login menu. is displayed.



### Type login (Enable user login administration)

Select Network Authentication to enable user login administration.

- 1 In the User Login menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Login Type.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Login Type screen appears.



- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Network Authentication or Disabled.

- 4 Press [OK]. The User Login menu. appears again.



Note When Network Authentication is selected, set the network authentication server.

### By. auth. res. (Network authentication setting)

Set network authentication server.



Note These settings are only displayed when Network Authentication has been set as Login Type (Enabling User Login Administration) on page 4-115.

- 1 In the User Login menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Par. auth. res.



**Port (Port number setting)**

Enter the port number for the authentication server.



**Note** This parameter is only displayed when Ext. has been set as Server Type (Selecting the Server Type) on page 4-116.

Port: a b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

**1** In the Par. auth. res., press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Port.

**2** Press [OK]. The Port screen appears.

**3** Enter the port number using the numeric keys.



**Note** If the port number is left blank, the default port number will be enabled.

**4** Press [OK]. The port number is saved and the Par. auth. res. appears again.

**Domain name (Entering the domain name)**

Enter the domain name for the authentication server.



**Note** This setting is only displayed when NTLM or Kerberos has been set as Server Type (Selecting the Server Type) on page 4-116.

Domain name: ab  
\* ABC  
[ Text ]

**1** In the Param. print, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Domain name.

**2** Press [OK]. The Domain Name screen appears.

**3** Enter the domain name using the numeric keys.



**Note** Up to 256 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**4** Press [OK]. The domain name is registered and the Par. auth. res. appears again.

### Owner new user (Get network user properties)

This parameter is used to obtain user information from the LDAP server.

 **Note** This parameter is only displayed when Network Authentication has been set as Login Type (Enabling User Login Administration) on page 4-103 and NTLM or Kerberos has been set as Server Type (Select server type) on page 4-116.

```

Propr. nv util.: ab
*****_
2 Type authent.

[ To leave ]

```

- 1 In the ParamLogin User menu, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Owner. new user..
- 2 Press [OK]. The Owner menu. new user is displayed.

The options available in Propr. new user are the following :

- Off/On (Network User Properties Acquisition On/Off)...4-118
- Authentication type. (Authentication type setting)...4-118

 **Note** Authentication type. appears only when Kerberos has been set as the Server Type (Selecting the Server Type) on page 4-116.

### Off/On (Network User Properties Acquisition On/Off)

Set Prop. new user to Off/On.

```

Off/On: ab
1 Disabled
2 *****_

```

- 1 In the Prop. menu. new user, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Off/On.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Off/On screen appears.

- 3 Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select On or Off.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Owner menu. new user is displayed.

### Authentication Type (Authentication type setting)

Set the authentication method.

```

Type authent.: a b
*****_
2 SASL

```

- 1 In the Prop. menu. new user, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Authentication type.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Authentication Type screen. is displayed.

- 3 Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Simple or SASL.
- 4 Press [OK]. The Owner menu. new user is displayed.

### Login/logout

If user login administration is enabled, a user ID and password entry screen appears each time the machine is used. Enter the user information registered on the network authentication server as the login user name and login password.

Register new users from KYOCERA Net Policy Manager. For more information, refer to KYOCERA Net Policy Manager User Guide.



**Note** To perform the limited operations in the mode selection menu and control panel lock settings, it is necessary to log in with administrator rights.

For administrator settings, refer to Administrator on page 4-120.

For control panel lock, refer to Control Panel Lock on page 2-20.

## Connexion

To connect, proceed as follows.

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[ Menu ][Connexion]

**1** With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

**2** Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.



**Note** For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

Login nom utilis: O b  
User 1

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[ Menu ][Connexion]

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login input field password.

Login mot passe: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

**4** Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

Login nom utilis: O b  
User 1

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[ Menu ][Connexion]

**5** Enter the login password using the keys

then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



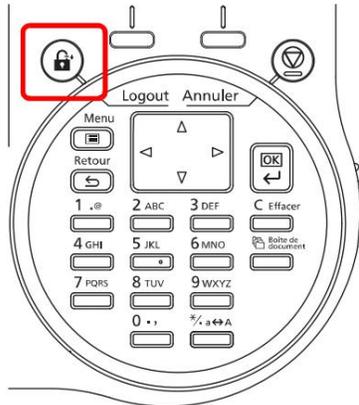
**Note** For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

## 6 Verify that the login username and password entered, then press [Login] ([Right Select]).



**Note** When job accounting is set, you can press [Menu] ([Left Select]), then select Counter on the menu that appears and press [OK] to see the count. of printed pages.

### Logout



When the operations are finished, press [Logout]. The login screen reappears.

#### Automatic logout

Automatic disconnection occurs in the following cases:

- When the machine is turned off.
- When the machine enters sleep mode after the auto sleep time has elapsed.
- When the machine is turned off after the auto-off time has elapsed.
- When settings are restored to default values after the auto panel reset timer has elapsed.

## Administrator

In the list of local users for the machine, 1 user with administrator rights and 1 user with device administrator rights are registered.

The properties of each user are as follows:

Machine Administrator		Administrator	
Username :	DeviceAdmin	Username :	Admin
Login nomutilis :	FS-2100D : 4000 FS-2100DN : 4000 FS-4100DN : 4500 FS-4200DN : 5000 FS-4300DN : 6000	Login nomutilis:	Admin
Login to pass:	FS-2100D : 4000 FS-2100DN : 4000 FS-4100DN : 4500 FS-4200DN : 5000 FS-4300DN : 6000	Login to pass:	Admin
Access level:	Machine Administrator	Access level:	Administrator

### Editing administrator information

It is possible to modify the information of the administrator. To modify the registered details, proceed as follows.



**Note** Log in as a device administrator to edit administrator information.

When logging in as an administrator, it is only possible to view administrator information.

```

List useful loc: ab
*****_
I DeviceAdmin

```

```

Details: P b
Username: 1/ 5
Admin

```

To change the login user name

```

Details: P b
Login nomutlis:2/ 5
Admin
[Modifier ]

```

```

Login nom utilis: ab
Admin*
ABC
[ Text ]

```

To change the login password

```

Details: P b
Login against pass: 3/5
yyyyyyyyyy
[Modifier ]

```

1 In the ParamLogin User menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Local user list.

2 Press [OK]. The Local User List screen is displayed.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the administrator to edit.

4 Press [OK]. Detailed user information is displayed.

5 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Login User Name.

6 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Edit Login User Name screen is displayed.

7 Change the login user name using the keys then press [OK]. The ogin username screen. is displayed at new.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

8 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Login Password.

New password: ab  
\*

ABC  
[ Text ]

**9 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The New screen password is displayed.**

Conf. motdepasse: a b  
\*

ABC  
[ Text ]

**10 Enter the new password using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The Conf. password is displayed at new.**



Note Up to 64 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**11 To confirm, re-enter the password to be saved.**

Enter the password using the numeric keys.

**12 Press [OK]. If the password matches, the password is changed to the new password and the Login Password menu is displayed again.**

If the password does not match, Password incorrect. appears and the New Password screen reappears. Retry entering the new password.

To change the email address

Details: p P b  
Addr. Email: 4/ 5

[Modifier ]

**13 Press  $\ddot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to select Addr. E-mail.**

Input address: ab  
\*

ABC  
[ Text ]

**14 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Address Entry screen appears.**

**15 Edit the address using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The Addr. Email is displayed again.**



Note Up to 128 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**To change account ID**

Note This item is displayed only when job accounting is set.

Details:	a b
Account ID: k	5/ 5
OTHER	
[Modifier ]	

**16** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Account ID.

Account ID: ab
k 341736
*****_

**17** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Account ID screen appears.

**18** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Account ID, then press [OK]. The Account ID screen reappears.



Note For other accounts, select OTHER.

**stop. ID card**

This function sets the login method when the optional Card Authentication Kit is used and users are managed using ID cards.



Note This item is displayed only when the optional Card Authentication Kit is activated. For details on the Card Authentication Kit, refer to Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide for Printer.

Param. cart ID: ab	a b
*****_	
2 Login to pass	
[ To leave ]	

**1** In the ParamLogin User menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Settings. ID card.

**2** Press [OK]. The Param. ID card is displayed.

The options available in Param. ID card are as follows:

- Login keyboard (Parameter for authorization of login by keyboard)...4-123
- Login password (Password login setting)...4-124

**Keyboard Login (Setting for keyboard login authorization)**

This setting also enables login using the numeric keys on the ID Card Login screen. When Allow is set, LoginCla is displayed on the login screen, and it is possible to login by entering the login user name and login password using the numeric keys. When Prohibit is set, it is not possible to login using the numeric keys.

LoginCla:	a b
*****_	
2 Prohibit	

**1** In the Param. ID card, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Keyboard login.

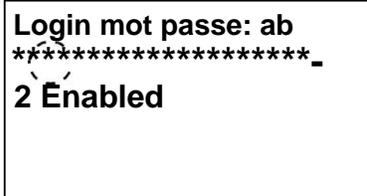
**2** Press [OK]. The Keyboard Login screen appears.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Allow or Disallow.

**4** Press [OK]. The Settings menu. ID card is displayed again.

#### Login password (Password login setting)

This function sets whether or not to enter a login password after authentication using an ID card. When set to On, the Login Password input screen is displayed after ID card authentication.



**1** In the Param. ID card, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Login password.

**2** Press [OK]. The Login Password screen appears.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Off or On.

**4** Press [OK]. The Settings menu. ID card is displayed again.

## Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings)

Job Accounting is a function that manages the number of pages for each department through the use of entered account IDs. To specify job accounting settings, it is necessary to log in with an administrator login user name and password. For details of user login administration, refer to User Login Param (User Login Parameter) on page 4-113.

Job Accounting on this machine provides the following features:

- Support for up to 100 services
- Account ID length can be 8 bits, 1 to 99,999,999
- Management of collective printing for the same account ID
- Total number of pages used for each service
- Selectable limits (from 1 to 9,999,999) for the number of pages used

The options available in the Job Count Settings menu are as follows:

- Accounting. work (Job Accounting Settings)...4-126
- Accounting report. (Printing the accounting report)...4-127
- Accounting ch. jobs (Totals displayed by account)...4-127
- Account list. (Account List Operation)...4-128
- Apply/restrict. (Operating Parameters When Limits Exceeded)...4-132
- Work ID. unknown (Operation settings for unknown account IDs)...4-132

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[ Connexion ]

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[ Connexion ]

**1 Press [Menu].**

**2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select UserName/JobAccount.**

**3 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.**



**Note** When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the UserName/ CptaJob is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

**4 With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.**

**5 Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.**



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login input field password.**

```

Login mot passe: ab
*
                                     ABC
                               [ Text ]

```

**7** Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

```

Login nom utilis: O b
Admin
Login to pass:
/*****_
                               [ Connexion]

```

**8** Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

```

NomUtil / CptaTrav: ab
*****_
2 Job Counter Settings
                               [ To leave ]

```

**9** Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name The login user name and login password entered are correct, the UserName/JobAccount menu screen is displayed.

**10** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Job Counter Setup.

**11** Press [OK]. The Job Account Settings menu appears.

```

Job Count Settings: ab
*****_
2 Report counts.
3 Count ch. trav
                               [ To leave ]

```

### Account. work (Job Accounting Settings)

The following procedure allows you to enable (On) and disable (Off) the Job Accounting feature.

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Accounting. works.

**2** Press [OK]. The Accounting screen. jobs is displayed.

```

Account. works: ab
*****_
2 Enabled

```

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On or Off, then press [OK]. The Job Account Settings menu is displayed new.

### Accounting report. (Printing the accounting report)

This option allows you to print the total number of pages for all accounts as a job accounting list.

```

To print.
Are you sure ?
z Report counts.

[ Yes ]           [ Non ]
  
```

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Accounting Report.

**2** Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). Accepted. appears and the printer prints a job accounting list.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Job Accounting Settings menu without printing the job accounting list.

### Compta ch. work (Totals displayed by account)

Displays the number of pages printed for each of the currently selected accounts.

This allows you to check the following numbers for printed pages:

- Total
- Comb.(none)
- Comb. (2 in 1)
- Comb. (4 in 1)
- R/V (Recto)
- R/V(Rec.Ver)



Note Before performing this operation, register the account in Account List. (Account List Operation) on page 4-128.

```

It counts. ch. trav: ab
*****_

k 00923022
k 12345678
  
```

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Ch. work

**2** Press [OK]. The Accounting menu ch. trav is displayed with the accounts with the highest number first.

```

k 341736: ab
*****_

2 Reset Counter
  
```

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select an account, then press [OK]. The Printed Pages/Reset menu. Counter is displayed.

```

Pages printed: O b
Total                300000
Comb.(none)         200000
Comb. (2 in 1) 100000
  
```

**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Printed Pages.

**5** Press [OK]. The Printed Pages menu list screen is displayed.

**6** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to check the required counter display.

**7** Press [OK]. The Printed Pages/Reset menu.  
Counter is displayed again.

#### Reset Account meter ch. trav (Totals reset by account)

Resets the number of printed pages for each of the currently defined accounts.



**Note** Before performing this operation, register the account in Account List. (Account List Operation) on page 4-128.

```
It counts. ch. trav: ab
*****_
k 00923022
k 12345678
```

```
k 341736: ab
*****_
2 Reset Counter
```

```
Reset Counter
Are you sure ?
z k 341736

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
```

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Ch. work

**2** Press [OK]. The Accounting menu ch. trav is displayed with the accounts with the highest number first.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select an account, then press [OK]. The Printed Pages/Reset menu. Counter is displayed.

**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Reset. Counter.

**5** Press [OK]. The reset confirmation menu is displayed.

To perform counter reset, press [Yes] ([Left selection]).

Ended. is displayed, the counter is reset and the Printed Pages/Reset menu is displayed. Counter is displayed again.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Printed Pages/Reset menu screen. Counter without resetting the counter.

### Accounting list (Account list operation)

Specifies the settings for the service to be used for setting job accounting.

#### Add (Account Registration)

Use this procedure to add a new account.



**Note** Account IDs are handled as numeric strings and therefore "1" and "001" are treated as different accounts. Also, when job accounting is enabled, no jobs are printed if the information indicating the accounts from which the jobs to be printed are not provided.

**1** In the Job Account Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Account List.

```

Account list: ab
*****_
k 00122
k 3485739
[ To add ]

```

2 Press [OK]. The Accounting List menu. appears and displays a list of registered accounts in ascending order.

```

Account ID: P b
/*****_

```

3 Press [Add] ([Right Select]). The Account ID menu appears.

```

k 1228: ab
*****_
2 Delete
3 Exit

```

4 Use the numeric keys to enter the account ID to add.

5 Press [OK]. When the account has been added, a pick list of options is displayed.

```

This Account ID
is already registered.

```

This message is displayed if the account ID has already been registered.

#### Detail/Mod. (Checking/changing registered account ID settings)

This procedure allows you to verify or modify registered accounts.

```

Account list: ab
*****_
k 00122
k 3485739
[ To add ]

```

1 In the Job Account Settings menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Account List.

2 Press [OK]. The Accounting List menu. appears and displays a list of registered accounts in ascending order.

```

k 1228: ab
*****_
2 Delete
3 Exit

```

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select an account to check or edit, then press [OK]. A selection list of options appears.

```

Detail/Edit: ab
*****_
2 Restrict. impr.

```

4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Detail/Edit, then press [OK]. The Detail/Edit menu screen. is displayed.

```

Account ID: P b
/*****_

```

5 To change an account ID, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to Select Account ID, then press [OK]. The Account ID menu appears.

```

Detail/Edit: ab
*****_
2 Restrict. impr.

```

6 Enter the new Account ID using the numeric keys.

7 Press [OK]. When the modification of the account ID is completed, the Detail/Edit menu screen. is displayed.

```

This Account ID
is already registered.

```

This message is displayed if the account ID has already been registered.

```

Restrict. impr.: a b
*****_
  \ /
2 Counter limit
3 Ref. user

```

8 To place print limits on this account, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Restrict. print, then press [OK]. The Restrict. print is displayed.

- Disabled
- Counter limit
- Ref. user

```

Detail/Edit: ab
1 Account ID
*****_
3 Counter limit

```

9 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select a setting, then press [OK]. When the setting is completed, the Detail menu screen/ Mod. is displayed.

```

Counter limit: ab
(1 - 9999999)
/9999999-pages

```

- 10** When Counter Limit is set for Restrict. print in step 9, set the limit for the total number of pages that can be printed using this account. Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Counter Limit, then press [OK]. The Counter Limit menu is displayed.

**IMPORTANT** Counter Limit is displayed when Counter Limit is set for Restrict. print..

```

Detail/Edit: ab
1 Account ID
2 Restrict. impr.
*****_

```

- 11** Use the numeric keys or  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to enter the limit to be set for this account. After entering the page limit, press [OK]. The setting is stored and the Detail/Modify menu. appears again.

### Delete (Deleting Registered Accounts)

You can use this procedure to delete a registered account ID.

- 1** In the Job Account Settings menu, press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Account List.
- 2** Press [OK]. The Accounting List menu. appears and displays a list of registered accounts in ascending order.

```

Account list: ab
*****_
k 00122
k 3485739
[To add ]

```

- 3** Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select the account ID to delete.
- 4** Press [OK]. A selection list of options appears.

```

k 1228: ab
*****_
2 Delete
3 Exit

```

- 5** Press  $\downarrow$  or  $\uparrow$  to select Delete, then press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

```

To delete.
Are you sure ?
z k 1228

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]

```

- 6** To perform account deletion, press [Yes]. ([Left selection]). Ended. is displayed and the account is deleted. After deleting the account, the Account List screen. is displayed.

```

Account list: ab
*****_
k 3485739

[To add ]

```

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the list of selection options without deleting the account.

### Appl/ restrict. (Operating parameters when limits are exceeded)

Use this option to specify the action taken when a service exceeds its printing limits.

```

Appl/ restrict.: a b
1 Immediately
*****_
  
```

```

Job Acct.Setting :ab
4 List counts.
*****_

6 ID trav. unknown
      [ To leave ]
  
```

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Appl/restrict..

**2** Press [OK]. The Appl/restrict screen. is displayed.

- Immediately (prohibits printing from this job) • Then (prohibits printing from the next job)

**3** Press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select a setting, then press [OK]. The Job Account Settings menu list reappears.

### Job ID unknown (Operating parameters for unknown account IDs)

Use this procedure to specify whether print jobs from services with unknown IDs are allowed.

```

ID trav. unknown: ab
*****_
  2 Allow
  
```

```

Job Acct.Setting :ab
4 List counts.
5 Appl/ restrict.
*****_

      [ To leave ]
  
```

**1** In the Job Counter Settings menu, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Job ID. unknown.

**2** Press [OK]. The Job ID screen. unknown is displayed.

- Deny (not printed) • Allow (Printed)

**3** Press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select a setting, then press [OK]. The Job Account Settings menu list reappears.

## Adjust/Maint. (Selection/parameter Adjustment/Maintenance)

Adjust/Maintenance is used to adjust print quality and to perform printer maintenance.

The options available in Adjust/Maintenance are:

- Restart (Restart Printer)...4-133
- Param. service (for maintenance)...4-133

**NOTICE** Param. service is primarily a menu used by service personnel for maintenance work. Customers do not need to use this menu.

```
Adjust/Maint.: ab
*****_
2 Param. service

[ To leave ]
```

- 1 Press [Menu].
- 2 Push  $\bar{\Delta}$  or  $\bar{\nabla}$  to select Adjust/Maint..
- 3 Press [OK]. The Adjust/Maint. displays a list of available options.

## Restart (Restart Printer)

The following procedure is used to reset the temporary printer settings, such as restoring the default values for the page orientation or the current font, etc. defined through commands. Downloaded fonts and macros are deleted from printer memory.

```
To restart.
Are you sure ?

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
```

- 1 In the Adjust/Maint. menu screen, press  $\bar{\Delta}$  or  $\bar{\nabla}$  to select Restart..

- 2 Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The printer is restarted.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the Adjust/Maint menu. without restarting the printer.

## Param. service (for maintenance)

**NOTICE** Param. service is primarily a menu used by service personnel for maintenance work.

Element	Description	Value
Service Status Page	The maintenance configuration page contains more detailed printer setting information than the standard configuration page. It is therefore more intended for maintenance operations. However, it may contain a great deal of information that may be useful to you.	Yes No

Element	Description	Value
Network status	<p>The network configuration page contains detailed information about network settings. It is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel, but contains information that may be useful to you.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The Network Status menu only appears on network-enabled models.</p>	Yes No
Res status opt.	<p>The optional network configuration page contains detailed information about network settings. It is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel, but contains information that may be useful to you.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The Res. opt. appears only when the optional network interface kit (IB-50) or wireless network interface kit (IB-51) is installed.</p>	Yes No
Test page	<p>The test page is printed to verify the effectiveness of the printer adjustments. It is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel, but contains information that may be useful to you.</p>	Yes No
Maintenance	<p>This item specifies the setting for confirming the replacement with the new maintenance kit (restoring the total number of images printed with the maintenance kit). This option is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel.</p> <p><b>Note</b> The Maintenance menu is displayed only when Replace MK appears.</p>	Yes No
New Developer	<p>This parameter specifies the setting for confirmation of replacement with the new developer (restoring the total number of images printed with the developer). This option is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel.</p>	Yes No
Refresh. auto drum	<p>An automatic drum refresh is sometimes performed when the machine is turned on or when the machine comes out of sleep mode. In order to maintain image quality, Auto Drum Refresh is implemented automatically after observing ambient temperature and humidity.</p> <p>Here the time to perform automatic drum refresh is set.</p>	Off, Short, Standard, Long
Drum	<p>This option sets the refresh mode for the drum. When print quality declines, refreshing the drum can restore print quality. This option is mainly used for maintenance by service personnel.</p>	Yes No
Write data	<p>This function writes data to the USB memory.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This menu is displayed only when a USB memory is inserted.</p>	Yes No
Altitude Adj.	<p>This function sets the altitude adjustment mode. If this machine is used at an altitude of 1500 m or higher and the print quality deteriorates, the altitude adjustment mode setting can be used to restore the print quality.</p>	Normal, High 1, High 2

---

Element	Description	Value
MC	<p>This function sets the main charger output. If print quality has deteriorated, the output of the main charger can be changed to restore print quality.</p> <p><b>Note</b> This menu is displayed only when Altitude Adj. is set to Normal.</p>	1 - 5

---

## opt. (optional app settings)

You can use the optional applications installed on this machine.

### Application

The applications listed below are installed on this machine.

It is possible to use a trial version of these applications for a limited period of time.

- DATA SECURITY (Data Security Kit(E))
- ID Card (Card Authentication Kit(B)) •
- UG-33 (ThinPrint)



Note Restrictions such as the number of app usages during the trial period differ between apps.

The options available in the Function opt. are the following :

- Launching an Application...4-136
- View Application Details...4-138

### Launching an application

To start using an application, follow these steps.

Login nom utilis: O b  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_

Login to pass:

[Connexion]

Login nom utilis: ab  
\*

ABC

[ Text ]

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin

Login to pass:

/\*\*\*\*\*\_

[Connexion]

**1 Press [Menu].**

**2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Optional Features.**

**3 Press [OK]. The login screen appears.**



Note When user login administration is set:

- When logging in as an administrator, the login screen is not displayed and the Opt. is displayed.
- Setting is not possible when logging in without administrator status. Log back in as administrator.

**4 With the Login user name input field selected, press [OK]. The Login User Name screen is displayed.**

**5 Enter the user ID using the numeric keys, then press [OK]. The login screen reappears.**



Note The initial setting for the administrator user login name is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**6 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Login Password input field.**

Login mot passe: ab  
\*  
  
ABC  
[ Text ]

**7** Press [OK]. The Login Password input screen is displayed.

Login nom utilis: O b  
Admin  
Login to pass:  
/\*\*\*\*\*\_ \_  
[Connexion]

**8** Enter the login password using the keys then press [OK]. The login screen is displayed new.



**Note** The initial setting for the administrator login password is "Admin".

For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

Optical function: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_ \_  
2 ID Card  
3 UG-33  
[ To leave ]

**9** Press [Login] ([Right Select]). If the name User name and login password entered are correct, the Opt. is displayed.

DATA SECURITY: a b  
\*\*\*\*\*\_ \_  
2 Details

**10** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired application.

**11** Press [OK].

License activated: ab  
\*\*\*\*\*\_ \_  
2 Trial

**12** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select License Enabled.



**Note** To view details of the selected application, tap Details.

**13** Press [OK].

**14** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Official.



**Note** To use the application on a trial basis, select Trial and press [OK]. The confirmation screen is displayed, then press [Yes] ([Left Select]).

License Key: ab  
 (0000 - 9999)  
 /0000- - 0000 -

**15 Press [OK].**

**16 Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the license key.**



**Note** Some applications do not require entering a license key.

License Key: ab  
 (0000 - 9999)  
 1234 - /5678- -

**17 Press [OK].**

**18 When the confirmation screen is displayed, press [Yes] ([Left selection]).**

**IMPORTANT** If the date or time is changed while using an application, the latter can no longer be used.



**Note** If a message requesting a restart appears after making the changes, follow the instructions in the message and turn the machine off and then on again.

## View application details

Use the procedure below to view the details of an application.

DATA SECURITY: a b  
 ?\*\*\*\*\*  
**2 Details**

**1** In the Op Functions menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the application for which to view details.

**2** Press [OK].

Details: **P b**  
 Function name: 1/ 4  
 DATA SECURITY  
 [ Details ]

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Details.

**4** Press [OK]. It is now possible to see the information details of the selected application.

## 5 Document box

---

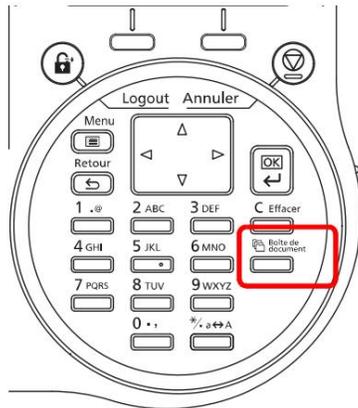
This chapter covers the following topics:

Document box.....	5-2
Custom box.....	5-4 Job
Box .....	5-24
Computer settings (printer driver) .....	5-37

## document box

Document Box is a function for saving print data from a computer to the SSD (option), SD/SDHC memory card (option) or RAM disk of the machine, and then printing it to from the control panel.

Press [Document Box] to display the document box menu.



The document box has the following functions.

- Personalized box...5-4
- Job Box...5-24



**Note** When an SD/SDHC memory card (option) is installed, Job Box can be used. Using the RAM disk allows you to use some Job Box functions.

## Presentation of the personalized box and the box of works

The presentation of the custom box and the job box and the necessary options are as follows:

	Personal box.	Work box
Main function	This is a generic box. Print data can be stored in the custom box and then reused when needed.	The Job Box is a print feature that enables the Job Retention feature. Job Retention has four modes which are briefly described below. Quick Copy: Print additional copies later.  Check before printing: Check the first copy before continuing to print the other copies.  Private printing: Keep the document in the printer to prevent unauthorized access. Stored Work: Store documents electronically such as fax cover sheets.
Origin of storage request	Printer driver	Printer driver
Added more boxes	Yes (up to a maximum of 1000 boxes)	Non
Set Password	Yes	Yes (possible in Private Print and Stored Job)
Data after printing	Stored	Stored except for Private Printing

		<b>Personal box.</b>	<b>Work box</b>
<b>Login administration support users</b>		<b>Yes (users can be configured separately for each box)</b>	<b>Non</b>
<b>Options d'installation</b>	<b>SSD</b>	<b>Available</b>	<b>Available</b>
	<b>Memory card SD/SDHC</b>	<b>Not available</b>	<b>Available</b>
<b>RAM disk usage</b>		<b>Not available</b>	<b>Available (only Verification before printing and Private print can be used)</b>



**Note** For more information on the optional SSD and SD/SDHC memory card, see About Options on page A-5.

For more information on the RAM disk, refer to RAM Disk Settings (Using the RAM Disk) on page 4-84.

For more information on the SSD, refer to Format SSD (SSD formatting) on page 4-86.

For formatting the SD/SDHC memory card, refer to Format SD card (Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card) on page 4-86.

## Custom box

**IMPORTANT** To use a Custom Box, an optional solid-state drive (HD-6) must be installed in the printer. The HD-6 must be formatted from the printer. For more information, see Format SSD (SSD formatting) on page 4-86.

The custom box is a generic box that allows the user to save print data to the printer's SSD and reuse it when needed.

The transmission of data to be saved in the box is performed by the printer driver. For more information, see Printer Driver User Guide.

Use the printer's control panel to print print data stored in a custom box.



**Note** On network-enabled models, creating and setting up custom boxes is also possible from Command Center RX.

## Procedure for Printing Using a Custom Box

Follow the process below when using the custom box.

Custom Box Registration (page 5-5)

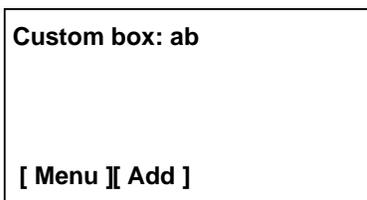
•

Specifying the Custom Box from a Computer and Sending the Print Job (page 5-37)

•

Using the control panel to specify a file in the box and print it (page 5-16)

## Control panel display



**1 Press [Document Box]. The Custom Box list screen. or the Job Box menu screen is displayed.**



**Note** After pressing [Document Box], the Custom Box list screen can be displayed. or Job Box menu screen or to set them. Refer to Def. screen(box) (Document Box Default Screen Settings) on page 4-78.

If the Job Box menu is displayed, follow the procedure below to display the Custom Box list screen.

- 1 Press [Back].
- 2 Press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select Custom Box.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Custom Box list screen. is displayed.

The options available in Custom Box are as follows:

- Using Custom Box (Creating, Editing and Deleting Box)...5-5
- File operations (printing, deleting and moving files)...5-16

## Using the Custom Box (Creating, Editing, and Deleting Box)

It is possible to create custom boxes and change the box settings.

The following operations are possible:

- Creating Custom Box...5-5
- Editing and Deleting Custom Boxes...5-12
- Sorting the Custom Box List...5-13
- Finding Custom Boxes...5-14
- Setting automatic document deletion for custom boxes...5-15



Note Creating and setting up custom boxes is also possible from Command Center RX. For more information, see Command Center RX User Guide.

### Custom Box Creation

Create a custom box. Enter the box name and box number, then proceed to box detail setting.



Note When user login administration is enabled, log in as a user with administrator rights.

Input num. box: ab  
\*  
s  
ABC  
[ Text ]

**1** In the Custom Box list screen, press [Add] ([Right Select]). The Num. box is displayed.

**2** Enter the box name using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered.  
For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

Input num. box: ab  
(0001 - 1000)  
/0003-

**3** Press [OK]. The Num. box is displayed.

**4** Use the numeric keys or press  $\ddot{y}$  or  $\ddot{y}$  to enter the box number.



Note Enter the box number as a four-digit number from 0001 to 1000.

q Boîte03: a b  
\*\*\*\*\*\_  
2 Details

**5** Press [OK].

## 6 Press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select Details or Exit, then press [OK].

To set box details, select Details and skip to Box Detail Settings on page 5-6.

If box details are not to be defined, select Exit and complete the operation.

### Box detailed parameters

Set box details if required. The items to be set are different when user login administration is disabled, when user login administration is enabled and the user is logged in with administrator rights, and when user login administration is users is enabled and the user is logged in with user rights.

<b>Details:</b> <b>Box name: 1/9</b> <b>Box03</b>  <b>[ Modifier]</b>	<b>P b</b>
---	------------

The detailed parameters for the box are shown below.

Setting	User login enabled	User Login Disabled		Reference page
		User Administrator		
box name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Box name (edit box name)...5-7
Owner	-	Yes	Non	Owner (owner settings)...5-7
Permission	-	Yes	Yes	Authorization (settings for sharing a box)...5-8
box password	Yes	Yes	Yes	Box Password (box password setting)...5-8
Box number	Yes	Yes	Yes	Box No. (change box number)...5-9
Restrict. util.	Yes	Yes	Non	restrictions util. (parameter for maximum usage capacity)...5-9
Del.AutoFile	Yes	Yes	Yes	AutoFile Delete (setting for automatic file deletion)...5-10
Overwrite param.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Overwrite param. (storage overwrite setting)...5-11
Delete ap print	Yes	Yes	Yes	Delete ap print (parameter for deleting the file after printing)...5-11

Yes: The parameter can be changed.

No: The parameter cannot be changed.

- : No setting

**Box name (edit box name)**

Modify the name of the box.

Details: <span style="float: right;"><b>P b</b></span> Box name: 1/9 Box03  <div style="text-align: right;">[ Modifier ]</div>
--

**1** In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Box Name.

Input num. box: ab Box03*  <div style="text-align: center;">s</div> <div style="text-align: right;">ABC</div> <div style="text-align: right;">[ Text ]</div>
---

**2** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Input screen number box is displayed.

**3** Enter the box name using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered.

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**4** Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

**Owner (owner settings)**

When user login administration is enabled, set the owner of the box. If the owner is not defined, the displayed owner name is -----.

Details: <span style="float: right;"><b>P b</b></span> Owner: <span style="float: right;"><b>2/9</b></span> Smith  <div style="text-align: right;">[ Modifier ]</div>
---

**1** In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Owner.

Config. util.: a b *****  <b>2 None</b>
--

**2** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Setup screen. util. is displayed.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select User. network.



Note If the owner should not be defined, select None and press [OK].

**4** Press [OK]. The User ID screen appears.

User ID :ab *  <div style="text-align: right;">ABC</div> <div style="text-align: right;">[ Text ]</div>
--

5 Enter the User ID using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 64 characters can be entered.

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

6 Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

#### Authorization (settings for sharing a box)

When user login administration is enabled, this setting determines whether or not a mailbox is shared with other users.

Details:	<b>P b</b>
Permission:	<b>3/9</b>
Share	
	[ Modifier ]

1 In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Authorization.

Authorization: ab
*****
2 Private

2 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). screen Authorization is displayed.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Shared or Private.

4 Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

#### Box password (box password setting)

It is possible to set a password for a box and limit the users who have access to it. Enter if necessary.



Note This setting is not displayed when user login administration is enabled and Permission (settings for sharing a box) on page 5-8 has been set to Private.

Details:	<b>P b</b>
Box password: 4/9	
●●●●●●●●	
	[ Modifier ]

1 In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Box Password.

New password: ab	
*	s
	ABC
	[ Text ]

2 Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The New screen password is displayed.

<p>Conf. motdepasse: a b * S</p> <p style="text-align: right;">ABC</p> <p style="text-align: center;">[ Text ]</p>
--

**3** Enter the new password using the numeric keys.



**Note** Up to 16 characters can be entered. For details on entering characters, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**4** Press [OK]. The entry screen Conf. password is displayed.

**5** To confirm, re-enter the password to be saved.  
Enter the password using the numeric keys.

**6** Press [OK]. If the password is correct, the parameter is changed with the new password and the Details menu screen is displayed.

If the password is incorrect, the screen displays Incorrect password. and returns to the New Password screen where you can enter the new password again.

#### Box number (change box number)

Modify the box number.

<p>Details: <span style="float: right;"><b>P b</b></span> Box number: <span style="float: right;">5/9</span> 0002</p> <p style="text-align: center;">[ Modifier ]</p>
---

**1** In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Box No.

<p>Input num. box: ab (0001 - 1000) /0002-</p>
--

**2** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Input screen number box is displayed.

**3** Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the box number.



**Note** Enter the box number as a four-digit number from 0001 to 1000.

If the screen displays This box number already registered., it means that this box number is already in use. Register a different box number.

**4** Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

restrictions util. (parameter for maximum usage capacity)

It is possible to limit the capacity of the boxes in order to preserve the capacity of the SSD. To limit the usage capacity, enter the maximum value (MB) using the numeric keys. The limit value varies depending on the number of user boxes that are created, but the maximum can be entered between 1 and 30,000 (MB).

```

Details:                               P b
Restrict. util.: 6/9
200MB

[ Modifier]

```

**1** In the Details menu screen, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Restrict. useful..

```

Restrict. util.: a b
(1 - 30000)
/**200-MB

```

**2** Press **[Edit]** (**[Right Select]**). screen restrictions util. is displayed.

**3** Enter the limit value using the numeric keys, **ÿ** or **ÿ**.

**4** Press **[OK]**. The Details menu appears.

#### AutoFile Delete (setting for automatic file deletion)

This function automatically deletes documents that have been saved after a defined period. Set this setting to Enabled for automatic deletion, then enter the number of days the documents will be stored. It is possible to enter from 1 to 31 (days). Set this parameter to Disabled if automatic deletion is not used.

```

Details:                               P b
AutoFile Delete: 7/9
Disabled

[ Modifier]

```

**1** In the Details menu screen, press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Delete AutoFile.

```

Suppr.AutoFich: a b
*****_

```

**2** Press **[Edit]** (**[Right Select]**). The Delete AutoFile menu screen is displayed.

**3** Press **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Off/On.

**4** Press **[OK]**. The Disabled/Enabled screen appears.

```

Disabled/Enabled: ab
*****_
  \_ /
  2 Enabled

```

**5** Push **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select On or Off.

```
Suppr.AutoFich: a b
*****_
2 Period
```

**6** Press [OK]. The Delete AutoFile menu screen is displayed. new.



Note If Enabled was selected, set the number of days for storage under the Period setting. Period is only displayed if the function has been set to On.

```
Period: a b
(1 - 31)
/*7-jr(s)
```

**7** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Period.

**8** Press [OK]. The Period screen appears.

**9** Enter the number of days for storage using the keys numbers,  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ .

**10** Press [OK]. The Details menu reappears.

#### Overwrite param. (storage overwrite setting)

This setting is used to allow or disallow overwriting of old documents that have been stored for storing new documents.

```
Details: P b
Overwrite settings: 8/9
To allow
[ Modifier]
```

**1** In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Overwrite Settings.

```
Overwrite settings: ab
*****_
2 Prohibit
```

**2** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Overwrite Settings screen is displayed.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Allow or Disallow.

**4** Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

#### Delete ap print (setting for deleting file after printing)

This function automatically removes documents from boxes when printing is complete.

```
Details: P b
Delete after print: 9/9
Disabled
[ Modifier]
```

**1** In the Details menu screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select delete. ap print..

```

Suppr. ap impr.: ab
*****_
2 Enabled

```

**2** Press [Edit] ([Right Select]). The Delete screen. ap print is displayed.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On or Off.

**4** Press [OK]. The Details menu appears.

### Editing and Deleting Custom Boxes

It is possible to change detailed settings of custom boxes and delete boxes.

```

Custom box: ab
*****_
i 0002 XYZ box
i 0003 Commun
[ Menu ]      [ To add]

```

**1** In the Custom Box list screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select the box to modify or delete.

```

m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA g
j BBBB
[ Menu ]      [ Select]

```

**2** Press [OK]. The file list screen for the box selected is displayed.



Note If the password entry screen is displayed, enter the password using the numeric keys, then press [OK].

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

The following operations are possible:

- Editing Custom Boxes...5-12
- Deleting Custom Boxes...5-13

### Editing Custom Boxes

```

Menu: a b
*****_
2 Det./Edit. box
3 Delete

```

**1** In the file list screen, press [Menu] ([Select from the left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Det./Edit. box.

**3** Press [OK]. The Details screen appears.

```

Details: a b
Box name: 1/9
Box03
[ Modifier]

```

**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to check each parameter and make changes.



Note For the editing method, refer to Detailed Box Settings on page 5-6.

**5** When editing is complete, press [OK]. The screen of file list is displayed again.

### Deleting custom boxes

```

Menu: a b
*****_
2 Det./Edit. box
3 Delete
  
```

```

To delete.
Are you sure ?
z q ABC box

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
  
```

```

Custom box: ab
*****_
i 0003 Commun
i 0004 DEF box

[ Menu ]      [ To add ]
  
```

**1** In the file list screen, press [Menu] ([Select from the left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Delete.

**3** Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

**4** To perform deletion of the custom box, press [Yes] ([Left Select]). Ended. is displayed and the custom box is deleted. When the deletion of the custom box ends, the Custom Box list screen. is displayed at new.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the file list screen without deleting the custom box.

### Sorting the list of custom boxes

When user login administration is enabled, the list display can be sorted by box number order or box owner order.

```

Menu: a b
*****_
2 Search (No.)
3 Overtime file
  
```

```

Trier: a b
***\*****_
  \
2 Box owner
  
```

**1** In the Custom Box list screen, press [Menu] ([Select from the left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Sort.

**3** Press [OK]. The Sort screen appears.

**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Box No. or Box Owner.

**5** Press [OK]. The Menu screen reappears.

## Finding Custom Boxes

You can search for a custom box using the box number or box name.

```
Menu: a b
*****_
2 Search (No.)
3 Overtime file
```

**1** In the Custom Box list screen, press [Menu] ([Select from the left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Search (No.) or Search (Name).

**3** Press [OK]. The Search (N<sup>o</sup>) screen or the Search screen (Name) is displayed.

Research is possible using the methods below:

- Search by box number...5-14
- Search by box name...5-14

```
Search(No.): ab
(0001 - 1000)
/0003-
[ Menu ]
```

### Search by box number

```
Menu: a b
*****_
2 Search (Name)
```

**1** In Search (No.), press [Menu] ([Selection of left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Search (No.).

**3** Press [OK]. The Search (No.) screen appears.

```
Search(No.): ab
(0001 - 1000)
/0003-
[ Menu ]
```

**4** Enter the box number to search and press [OK]. A search is performed with the box number entered.

### Search by box name

```
Menu: a b
*****_
2 Search (Name)
```

**1** In Search (No.), press [Menu] ([Selection of left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Search (Name).

Search (Name): ab	
Box03*	s
ABC	
[ Menu ]	[ Text ]

**3** Press [OK]. The Search (Name) screen is displayed.

**4** Enter the box name to search for and press [OK]. A search is performed with the box name entered.



Note For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A 2.

### Setting automatic document deletion for custom boxes

Set the time when documents stored in custom boxes should be automatically deleted.

Menu:	a b
*****_	
2 Search (No.)	
3 Overtime file	

**1** In the Custom Box list screen, press [Menu] ([Select from the left]). The Menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Overtime. file

**3** Press [OK]. The Overtime screen file is displayed.

Heure supp. fich: ab
Hour Min.
/00-: 00

**4** Use the number keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to enter the hours and minutes.

Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to increase or decrease numbers.

Use  $\bar{y}$  and  $\bar{y}$  to change input position, shown highlighted.

**5** Press [OK]. The Menu screen reappears.

## File operations (printing, deleting and moving files)

You can print files stored in a custom box, delete them, or move them to another custom box.

The following operations are possible:

- Box number/box name (select a file)...5-16
- Select/deselect all files...5-16
- Print a file...5-17
- Printing a file (changing print settings)...5-18
- Delete a file...5-22
- Moving Files...5-22
- Check file details...5-23

```
Custom box: ab
*****_
i 0002 XYZ box
i 0003 Commun
[ Menu ][ Add ]
```

- 1 In the Custom Box list screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select a custom box.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA g
j BBBB g
[ Menu ][ Select. ]
```

- 2 Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of files stored in the custom box.



Note If the password entry screen is displayed, enter the password using the numeric keys, then press [OK].

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

### Box number/box name (select file)

To print/delete a file in the custom box, first select the file to print or delete.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA g
j BBBB g
[ Menu ][ Select. ]
```

- 1 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the file to print/delete.
- 2 When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file. Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



Note To select all files, follow the steps in Select/Deselect All Files on page 5-16.

### Select/deselect all files

All files in the custom box are selected.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA T
j BBBB T
[ Menu ][ Select. ]
```

- 1 In the file list screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select All Files.

```

m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA g
j BBBB g
[ Menu ][ Select. ]

```

**2 Press [Select] ([Right Select]).**

If a file is unchecked in the custom box, all files will be checked.

```

m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
j AAAA T
j BBBB T
[ Menu ][ Select. ]

```

If all files in the custom box are checked, all checked files are deselected.

**Print a file**

Print the file(s) selected in the custom box.

```

m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
2 Impr.(ParModif)
3 Delete

```

**1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.****2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print.****3 Press [OK]. The Copies menu appears.**

To change the number of copies remaining to print, use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the number of copies to print.



**Note** If Job Accounting is enabled, enter the Account ID in the login screen that appears. The Copies menu screen is displayed after login.

Dashes (--) are displayed and will then be replaced by the number of copy sets defined. With this setting, each set of numbered copies is printed.

```

Copies: a b
(1 - 999,--)
*****copies

```

```

Accepted.

```

**4 Press [OK]. The message Accepted. is displayed and printing begins. When Enabled is selected in Del. ap print (setting for deleting the file after printing) on page 5-11, the selected file will be deleted from the custom box after it is printed.**

### Print a file (change print settings)

To change the print settings for a file selected in a custom box and print it.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
2 Impr.(ParModif)
3 Delete
```

```
Copies: (1          a b
          - 999)
          ***1*copies
          [Function]
```

```
Source de paper: ab
*****_
F Letter Recycled
A A4          Normal
          [Function]
```

```
Accepted.
```

**1** On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print(ParEdit).

**3** Press [OK]. The Copies menu appears.

To change the number of copies remaining to print, use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the number of copies to print.



**Note** If Job Accounting is enabled, enter the Account ID in the login screen that appears. The Copies menu screen is displayed after login.

You can press [Function] ([right select]) to change the print settings. For more information, refer to Print Function Settings on page 5-18.

**4** Press [OK]. The Paper Source menu screen is displayed.

**5** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the tray containing the paper to be utilize.

**6** Press [OK]. The message Accepted. is displayed and printing begins. When Enabled is selected in Del. ap print (setting for deleting the file after printing) on page 5-11, the selected file will be deleted from the custom box after it is printed.

### Print function settings

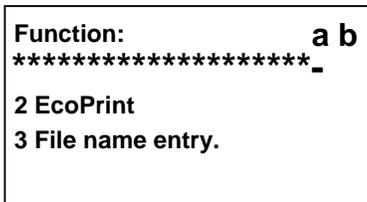
When printing, the print settings can be changed.

The options available in Print Function Settings are as follows:

- Verticalo verso (configuration of l'impression recto verso)...5-19
- EcoPrint (Selecting the EcoPrint mode)...5-19
- File name entry. (entering a file name)...5-20
- Job Completion Notice (settings for notification when jobs are completed)...5-20
- Delete After Print (setting for deleting data after printing)...5-21

**Verto verso (configuration of l'impression verso)**

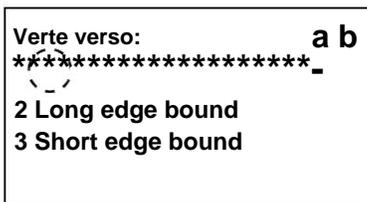
Set duplex printing. For more information, refer to Duplex (Setting up duplex printing) on page 4-42.



**1** In the Copies menu or Paper Selection menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Duplex.

**3** Press [OK]. The Duplex screen appears and displays the list of available duplex printing modes.



**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Simplex printing mode, desired back.

The following binding modes scroll across the screen:

Disabled (default)

Hardcover long edge

Short edge bound

Selecting Off disables duplex printing.

**5** Press [OK]. Duplex printing mode is set and the Function menu is displayed again.

**EcoPrint (EcoPrint mode selection)**

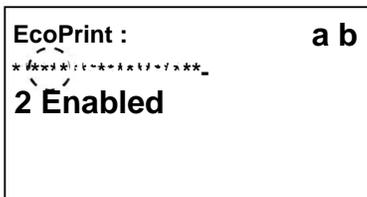
Set EcoPrint mode. For more information, refer to EcoPrint (Selecting EcoPrint Mode) on page 4-50.



**1** In the Copies menu or Paper Selection menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EcoPrint.

**3** Press [OK]. The EcoPrint screen appears.



**4** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select EcoPrint mode.

**5** Press [OK]. EcoPrint mode is set and the Function menu appears again.

**File name input. (entering a file name)**

Enter the file name. The entered file name is displayed as Job Name in Job Status and Job Log.

```

Function:          a b
*****_

2 EcoPrint
3 File name entry.
  
```

```

File name input: ab
doc*
          s
          ABC
[ Text ]
  
```

```

Infos suppl.: a b
*****_
 5 Date + n° trav.
  
```

**1** In the Copies menu or Paper Selection menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select File Name Entry.

**3** Press [OK]. The File Name Entry screen appears. is displayed.

**4** Enter the file name using the numeric keys.



Note Up to 32 characters can be entered.

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

**5** Press [OK]. The Additional Info screen is displayed.

**6** Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the information that can be set for the file name.

The following settings are available.

- None (No additional information is added).
- Date (To add the date).
- Job no. (to add the job number).
- Job no. + date (to add job number and date).
- Date + work no. (to add date and job number).

**7** Press [OK]. Save file name. The Function menu appears again.

**Job Completion Notice (settings for notification when jobs are completed)**

The end of a job is notified by e-mail.



Note To send e-mail on this machine, set the SMTP and POP3 settings to On. For more information, refer to Protocol Detail (Detailed settings for network protocol) on page 4-62.

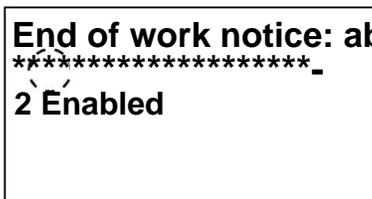
A mail server must be registered. For how to set up a server, see Command Center RX User Guide.



1 In the Copies menu or Paper Selection menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

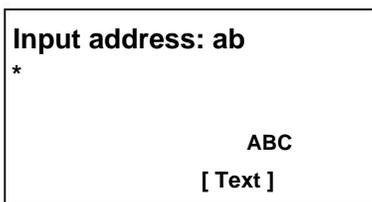
2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select JobFinish Notice.

3 Press [OK]. The Job Completion Notice screen appears.



4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select On.

5 Press [OK]. The Address Entry screen appears.



6 Enter the email address to receive the notification.



**Note** Up to 128 characters can be entered.

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

When user login administration is configured, the address of the logged in user is entered.

7 Press [OK]. Save address. The Function menu appears again.

**Delete After Print (setting for deleting data after printing)**

Use this setting to specify whether file data is deleted after printing.



1 In the Copies menu or Paper Selection menu, press [Function] ([Right Select]). The Function menu is displayed.

2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Delete After Print.

3 Press [OK]. The Delete After Print screen appears.



- 4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the Delete After setting.  
impr.
- 5 Press [OK]. The Delete After Print setting is set and the Function menu is displayed again.

## Delete a file

Delete the file(s) selected in the custom box.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
2 Impr.(ParModif)
3 Delete
```

- 1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Delete.
- 3 Press [OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

```
To delete.
Are you sure ?
z j Document_20111...
[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
```

- 4 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Ended. is displayed and the selected file(s) is(are) deleted.

Pressing [No] ([Right Select]) returns to the file list menu screen without deleting the file.

```
Ended.
```

## Moving files

A file can be moved to a different custom box.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
2 Impr.(ParModif)
3 Delete
```

- 1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Move.

```
m 0001 ABC box: ab
*****_
```

```

Custom box: ab
*****_
i 0003 Commun
i 0004 Document box

```

3 Press [OK]. The Custom Box list screen. is displayed.

```

Ended.

```

4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the destination box.

5 Press [OK]. The message Done. is displayed and the file(s) selected is (are) moved.



Note If the password entry screen is displayed, enter the password using the numeric keys, then press [OK].

For details on character entry, refer to Character Entry Method on page A-2.

## Check file details

Details for the file selected with the cursor are displayed.

1 In the file list screen, press [Menu] ([Left Select]).

```

Menu: a b
*****_
2 Det./Edit. box
3 File detail

```

2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select File Detail.

```

Details: P b
File name: 1/ 5
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRSTN
[ Details ]

```

3 Press [OK]. The details for the file selected with the cursor are displayed.

The file details include 5 pages in total. Press  $\bar{y}$  to display the next page or  $\bar{y}$  to return to the previous page.

```

Details: O b
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRSTU
VWXYZ.txt

```

In the File Name screen, if the file name is abbreviated because it cannot be displayed on one line, press [Details] ([Right Select]) to switch to three-line display.

## Work box

**IMPORTANT** To use Job Box, an optional SSD (HD-6) or SD/SDHC memory card must be installed in the printer. The RAM (virtual) disk can also be used in Proof before Print and Private Print modes.

The Job Box is a print feature that enables the Job Retention feature. Settings are specified from the printer driver. Refer to Computer Settings (Printer Driver) on page 5-37 or the Printer Driver User Guide.



**Note** When using the RAM disk to use the Job Box, set the RAM disk mode to Enabled.

When using the SSD (HD-6) or SD/SDHC memory card to use the Job Box, set the RAM disk mode to Disabled. For more information, refer to RAM Disk Settings (RAM Disk Usage) on page 4-84.

## Job retention

Job Retention has four modes which are briefly described below. These modes are selected from the printer driver via the application software:

	Quick Copy	Check before impression	Private printing	Stored work
Main function	Print additional copies later.	Check the first copy before continuing to print the other copies.	Keep the document in printer to prevent unauthorized access.	Store the documents electronically such as fax cover sheets.
Origin of storage request	Printer driver	Printer driver	Printer driver	Printer driver
After setting the print settings in the application software	Prints simultaneously	Prints one copy simultaneously	does not print	does not print
Retrieved by	Control Panel	Control Panel	Control Panel	Control Panel
Default number of copies printed on recovery	Same as storage (modifiable)	one less (modifiable)	Same as storage (modifiable)	A (modifiable)
Maximum number of jobs stored †	300	300	Depends on capacity of SSD or SD/SDHC memory card (job is automatically deleted after printing)	Depends on capacity of SSD or SD/SDHC memory card
PIN Code Security No		Non	Yes	Yes (if needed)
Data after printing	Stored	Stored	Deleted	Stored
Power off data	Deleted	Deleted	Deleted	Stored

	Quick Copy	Check before impression	Private printing	Stored work
SSD (HD-6) or SD/SDHC memory card	Necessary	Useless (a disc RAM can also be used)	Useless (a disc RAM can also be used)	Necessary

† Storing additional jobs will delete older jobs.



**Note** Refer to the Printer Driver User Guide for driver settings and printing (backup) procedures.

## Procedure for printing using a Job Box

Follow the process below when using the Job Box.

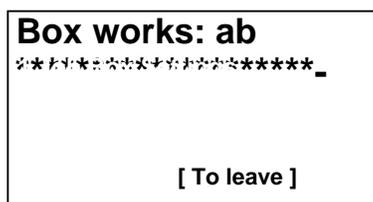
Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Sending the Print Job (page 5-37)

ÿ

Using the control panel to specify a file in the box and print it

- Quick Copy (page 5-26)
- Check before printing (page 5-29)
- Private Print (page 5-31)
- Stored Job (page 5-31)

## Control panel display



1 Press [Document Box]. The Custom Box list screen, or the Job Box menu screen is displayed.



**Note** After pressing [Document Box], the Custom Box list screen can be displayed, or Job Box menu screen or to set them. Refer to Def. screen(box) (Document Box Default Screen Settings) on page 4-78.

If the Custom Box menu, is displayed, follow the procedure below to display the Job Box list screen.

- 1 Press [Back].
- 2 Press ÿ or Ÿ to select Job Box.
- 3 Press [OK]. The Job Box menu screen is displayed.

The options available in Workbox are:

- Quick Copy (Using Quick Copy)...5-26
- Using proof before printing...5-29
- Private/Stored (Printing a private or stored job)...5-31
- Job Box Settings (Job Box Setup)...5-35

Quick Copy is only displayed if jobs have been saved to the SSD or SD/SDHC memory card in Quick Copy mode.

Quick Copy is also displayed if jobs have been saved to the SSD or SD/SDHC memory card in Proof before print mode.

Private/Stored is only displayed if jobs have been saved to the SSD, SD/SDHC memory card or RAM disk.

## Quick Copy (Using Quick Copy)

This mode allows you to print a job in a number of copies and store it on the SSD or SD/SDHC memory card. When you later want to print additional copies of this job, you can request it directly from the control panel.

The default number of print jobs that can be stored on the SSD or SD/SDHC memory card is 32. This value can be incremented up to 300. For more information, refer to Job Box Settings (Job Box Setup) on page 5-35. When the storage limit is reached, the oldest job is overwritten by the new one. When the printer is turned off, all jobs are deleted.



**Note** Refer to the Printer Driver User Guide for driver settings.

The following operations are possible:

- Printing additional copies in Quick Copy mode...5-26
- Select/deselect all files...5-27
- Print a file...5-27
- Deleting a Job in Quick Copy Mode...5-28
- Delete a file...5-28

### Printing additional copies in Quick Copy mode

```
Quick copy: ab
*****_
I User02
I User03
```

```
I User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select. ]
```

**1** In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Quick Copy.

**2** Press [OK]. The Quick Copy screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.

**4** Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

**5** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to display the desired job title.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in Select/Deselect All Files on page 5-27.

## Select/deselect all files

All files in the Job Box are selected.

```

I User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select. ]

```

**1** In the file list screen, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select All Files.

```

I User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313T
Q Data02.doc 120313T
[Select. ]

```

**2** Press [Select] ([Right Select]).

If all files in the job box are checked, all checked files are deselected.

```

I User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select. ]

```

If a file is unchecked in the job box, all files will be checked.

## Print a file

Print the file(s) selected in the Job Box.

```

I User01: ab
*****_
2 Delete

```

**1** On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

```

Copies: a b
(1 - 999,---)
*****copies

```

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print, then press [OK]. The Copies menu appears.

To print 2 or more copies, use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the number of copies to print.



Note Dashes (---) are displayed and will then be replaced by the number of copy sets set. With this setting, each set of numbered copies is printed.

```

Accepted.

```

**3** Press [OK]. The message Accepted. appears and the printer prints the selected job.

## Deleting a Job in Quick Copy Mode

Jobs saved using Quick Copy are automatically deleted when the printer is turned off, but you can use this procedure to delete jobs individually.

```
Quick copy: ab
*****_
| User02
| User03
```

```
| User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select.]
```

- 1 In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Quick Copy.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Quick Copy screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.
- 4 Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

- 5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the job user name to delete.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in the Select/deselect all files section on page 5-27.

## Delete a file

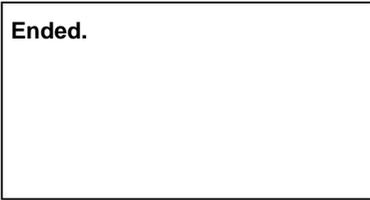
Delete the selected file(s) in the Job Box.

```
| User01: ab
*****_
2 Delete
```

```
To delete.
Are you sure ?
z Q Data01.doc 120313

[ Yes ]      [ Non ]
```

- 1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Delete, then press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.



Ended.

- 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Ended. appears and the printer deletes the selected job. Press [No] ([Right Select]) to return to the file list screen.

## Using proof before printing

In this mode, when you print multiple copies, a first proof copy is printed for you to review before continuing to print the remaining copies. This reduces paper waste.

The printer prints one copy and simultaneously saves the job to the SSD, SD/SDHC memory card, or RAM disk. You can also change the number of copies when printing resumes from the control panel.

When the printer is turned off, all jobs are deleted.

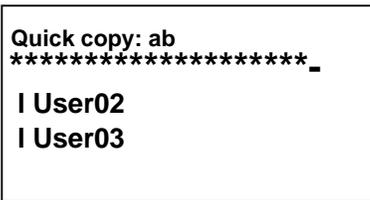


Note Refer to the Printer Driver User Guide for driver settings.

The following operations are possible:

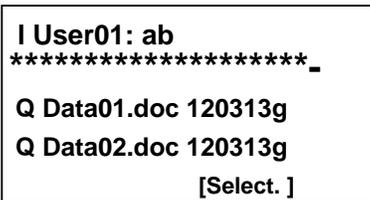
- Printing the Remaining Copies of a Job in Proof-Before-Print Mode...5-29
- Print a file...5-30
- Deleting a Job in Proof Before Print Mode...5-30
- Delete a file...5-31

## Printing the Remaining Copies of a Job in Proof-Before-Print Mode



Quick copy: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 I User02  
 I User03

- 1 In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Quick Copy.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Quick Copy screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.



I User01: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 Q Data01.doc 120313g  
 Q Data02.doc 120313g  
 [Select.]

- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.
- 4 Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

- 5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the job user name to be printed.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in Select/Deselect All Files on page 5-27.

## Print a file

Print the file(s) selected in the Job Box.

```

1 User01: ab
*****_
2 Delete
  
```

```

Copies:          a b
(1 - 999,---)
*****copies
  
```

```

Accepted.
  
```

**1** On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print, then press [OK]. The Copies menu appears.

To change the number of copies remaining to print, use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to set the number of copies to print.



**Note** Dashes (---) are displayed and will then be replaced by the number of copy sets set. With this setting, each set of numbered copies is printed.

**3** Press [OK]. The message Accepted. appears and the printer prints the selected job.

## Deleting a Job in Proof Before Print Mode

Saved jobs are automatically deleted when the printer is turned off, but you can also use this procedure to delete jobs individually.

```

Quick copy: ab
*****_
1 User02
1 User03
  
```

```

1 User01: ab
*****_
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select. ]
  
```

**1** In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Quick Copy.

**2** Press [OK]. The Quick Copy screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.

**4** Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

## 5 Push $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select the job user name to delete.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in Select/Deselect All Files on page 5-27.

## Delete a file

Delete the selected file(s) in the Job Box.

**1 User01: ab**  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_

**2 Delete**

## 1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

To delete.  
 Are you sure ?

**z Q Data01.doc 120313**

[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]

## 2 Press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select Delete, then press sure OK]. A confirmation screen appears.

Ended.

## 3 Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). The message Done. is displayed and the selected job is deleted.

Press [No] ([Right Select]) to return to the file list screen.

## Private/Stored (Printing a private or stored job)

Private mode allows you to designate a job not to print until it is launched from the control panel.

When submitting the job from the application, it is sufficient to specify a 4-digit passcode at the printer driver level. To start the job, just enter this access code from the control panel. The confidentiality of the work is thus guaranteed.

In Stored mode, access codes are not required. However, they can be set in the printer driver if printing with PIN code security is required. In this case, the access code must necessarily be entered at the control panel for the stored job to be printed. The printed data will be stored on the SSD, SD/SDHC memory card or RAM disk after printing.



**Note** Refer to the Printer Driver User Guide for driver settings.

The following operations are possible:

- Printing a private or stored job...5-32

- Print a file...5-32
- Deleting a private or stored job...5-33
- Delete a file...5-34

## Printing a Private or Stored Job

```
Private/Stored: ab
*****
I User02
I User03
```

```
I User01: ab
*****
Q Data01.doc 120313g
Q Data02.doc 120313g
[Select.]
```

- 1 In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Private/Stored.
- 2 Press [OK]. The Private/Stored screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.
- 3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.
- 4 Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

- 5 Push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the job user name to be printed.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in the Select/deselect all files section on page 5-27.

## Print a file

Print the file(s) selected in the Job Box.

```
I User01: ab
*****
2 Delete
```

```
ID: P b
*****
```

- 1 On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Print, then press [OK]. If the selected job was saved as a private print job, its ID is displayed. If the job was saved in stored job mode, the number of direct copies is displayed.

### 3 Use the numeric keys to enter the passcode in the printer driver.

Press [OK]. If the passcode entered is correct, the Copies menu screen is displayed.

If the entered passcode is incorrect, the ID menu screen is displayed next to new.



Note When the access code is set to the selected document in the Invalid ID checked box appears to indicate the error.

Copies: a b  
 (1 - 999,---)  
 \*\*\*\*\*copies

### 4 To print 2 or more copies, use the numeric keys or press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to set the number of copies to print.

After selecting multiple copies in the printer driver, it is also possible to return to "1" from the control panel using the same method.



Note Dashes (---) are displayed and will then be replaced by the number of copy sets set. With this setting, each set of numbered copies is printed.

Accepted.

### 5 Press [OK]. The message Accepted. appears and the printer prints the selected job.

## Deleting a private or stored job

You can delete stored jobs individually. To do this, follow the procedure below. Unlike stored jobs, private jobs are automatically deleted when you turn off the printer after printing is complete.

#### 1 In the Job Box menu, press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select select Private/Stored.

Private/Stored: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 I User02  
 I User03

#### 2 Press [OK]. The Private/Stored screen displays the list of names user for stored jobs.

#### 3 Press $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select the user name that has been entered in the printer driver.

I User01: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
 Q Data01.doc 120313g  
 Q Data02.doc 120313g  
 [Select. ]

#### 4 Press [OK]. The printer displays a list of stored jobs under the selected username.

#### 5 Push $\bar{y}$ or $\bar{y}$ to select the job user name to be printed.

When pressing [Select] ([Right Select]), the file is selected. A checkmark is placed to the right of the selected file.

Select the checked file and press [Select] again ([Right Select]) to cancel the selection.



**Note** To select all files, follow the steps in Select/Deselect All Files on page 5-27.

## Delete a file

Delete the selected file(s) in the Job Box.

**1** User01: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_  
**2 Delete**

**1** On the file list screen, select the item and press [OK]. The Print/Delete menu screen is displayed.

ID: **P b**  
 \*\*\*\*\*

**2** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Delete, then press [OK]. The ID is displayed.

To delete.  
 Are you sure ?  
**z Q Data01.doc 120313**  
 [ Yes ] [ Non ]

**3** Use the numeric keys to enter the passcode in the printer driver.

**4** Press [Enter] ([Right Select]). If the entered passcode is correct, the Delete menu screen is displayed. If the entered passcode is incorrect, the ID menu screen is displayed again.



**Note** When the access code is set to the selected document in the Invalid ID checked box appears to indicate the error.

Ended.

**5** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). Ended. appears and the printer deletes the selected job.

Press [No] ([Right Select]) to return to the file list screen.

## Job Box Settings (Job Box Setup)

Change Job Box settings, such as the maximum number of documents that can be stored on the SSD or SD/SDHC memory card and auto-delete settings, and then select the storage medium.

The following items are available in the Job Box settings.

- Changing the maximum number of Quick Copy jobs...5-35
- Delete Stock Jobs (set auto delete time for temporary jobs)...5-35
- Storage Media (Selecting the storage media for jobs)...5-36

### Changing the Maximum Number of Quick Copy Jobs

Use the following procedure to change the maximum number of jobs in Quick Copy mode. This number can be between 0 and 300. The default value is 32.

**1** In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select  
select Job Box Settings.

```

Job Box Settings: ab
*****_
2 Delete Stock Jobs
3 Storage medium
           [ To leave ]
  
```

**2** Press [OK]. The Job Box Settings screen appears.

**3** Press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select Work. Quick Copy, then press  
[OK]. The Work screen. rap copy is displayed.

```

work quick copy: ab
(0 - 300)
           /32-trav.
  
```

**4** Use the numeric keys or press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to set  
the maximum number of quick copy jobs.

**5** Press [OK]. The setting is saved and the Param menu  
job box is displayed again.

### Stock Job Delete (set auto delete time for interim jobs)

When the defined period has elapsed, the provisional jobs are automatically deleted.

**1** In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select  
select Job Box Settings.

```

Job Box Settings: ab
!*:***:*****_
2 Delete Stock Jobs
3 Storage media
           [ To leave ]
  
```

**2** Press [OK]. The Job Box Settings screen appears.

**3** Press  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  or  $\bar{\bar{y}}$  to select Delete Stock Jobs, then press  
[OK]. The Delete Stock Job screen appears.

```

Delete Stock Job: ab
*****_
2 1 hour
3 4 hours

```

4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired auto clear time. The list displays the following times:

Disabled (automatic deletion is not performed)

1 hour (deleted after 1 hour)

4 hours (deleted after 4 hours)

1 day (next day deletion)

1 week (deletion the following week)

5 Press [OK]. The setting is saved and the Param menu job box is displayed again.

### Storage medium (selection of storage medium for jobs)

If both the optional SSD and SD/SDHC memory card are installed, it is possible to choose which storage medium to use.



**Note** When this setting has been made, turn the machine off and then on again. This operation is mandatory for the settings to be taken into account.

```

Job Box Settings: ab
*****_
2 Delete Stock Jobs
3 Storage media
   [ To leave ]

```

1 In the Job Box menu, press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select select Job Box Settings.

2 Press [OK]. The Job Box Settings screen appears.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Storage Media, then press [OK]. The Storage Media screen appears.

4 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the desired storage medium. The list displays the following media:

Internal memory (SSD)

SD card

```

Support stockage: a b
*****_
2 SD card

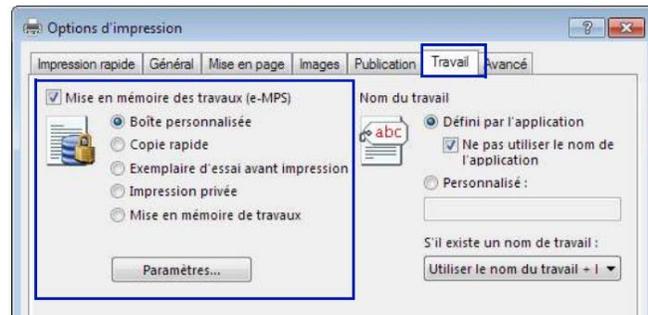
```

5 Press [OK]. The setting is saved and the Param menu job box is displayed again.

## Computer Settings (printer driver)

Follow the procedure below to store data in a Custom Box or Job Box.

- 1 From the application's File menu, select the Print option. The Print dialog box appears.
- 2 Click the printer drop-down list. This list contains all printers installed in Windows. Click on the device name.
- 3 Click Properties. The Properties dialog box appears.
- 4 Click on the Job tab and check the Save data to memory box. jobs (e-MPS) to configure the function.



document box		Printer driver setting method
Personal box.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select Custom Box.</li> <li>2 Click Settings.</li> <li>3 Select a custom box settings option: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select Use specific box number and enter the number and the word box password.</li> <li>• Select Ask box number, then click OK. When the Custom Box dialog box appears, enter a box number from the list of defined custom boxes. If a password has been set, enter the password.</li> <li>• Select Show list of box numbers, then click OK. When the Custom Box dialog box appears, select a box from the list. If a password has been set, enter the password. This option can be selected if Shared Box is selected in the SSD Settings dialog.</li> <li>• Select Check box number for each logged in user, then click OK. When the Custom Box dialog box appears, enter a box number. To include a password, select Password Required and enter the password. This option can be selected if Shared Box is selected in the SSD Settings dialog.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4 Click OK to return to the Print dialog box.</li> </ol>
Work box	Quick Copy	Select Quick Copy.
	Check before impression	Select Check before printing.
	Private Print Select	Private Print and set the passcode.
	Stored work	Select Job Storage. Set the access code if necessary.



Note For more information on using the printer driver software, refer to the Printer Driver User Guide.



## 6 Status menu

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

Displaying the Status menu screen .....	6-2
Job Status .....	6-2
Work log .....	6-4
Clavier USB .....	6-5
Wireless network.....	6-5

## Displaying the Status menu screen

Ready to print.

YOUR LT VX A4

[ State ] [ Toner ]

If Status is displayed in the lower left line of the screen while the machine is printing or waiting to print, the Status menu screen can be displayed.

Condition: ab  
 \*\*\*\*\*\_

2 Work Log  
 3 Clavier USB

[ To leave ]

Press [Status] ([Left Select]). The Status menu screen is displayed.

The following operations are possible on the Status menu screen:

- Job Status...6-2
- Job Log...6-4
- Clavier USB...6-5
- Wireless network...6-5



Note USB Keyboard is only displayed if a USB keyboard is connected.

Wireless Network is displayed only when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

## job status

It is possible to check the status of jobs being printed or waiting to be printed.

In addition to jobs printed from computers, it is also possible to check reports such as status pages and jobs printed directly from USB memory.

The information available in the Job Status is shown below.

Element	Contents	Results displayed		
		Screen	Icon	Description
job name	Job name Job name			job name
State	job status	Treatment	r	Impression
		Pause	s	Hanging print
		cancelation	t	Job cancelled.
Type trav.	Type of work	Printer	n	Printed from PC
		Report	j	Report
		USB	Y	Printed from USB memory
		Box	i	Printed from Job Box
Acceptance time	Job receipt time	Day/Month/Year Hour:Minute† Month/Day/Year Hour:Minute† Year/Month/Day Hour:Minute†		
Username	Username	username		
	printed			

Element	Contents	Results displayed		
		Screen	Icon	Description
Printed Pages Printed Pages ***Page(s)				page name
		***/**		Copies Made/Copies Specified

† Display differs by country or region.

**1** In the Status menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Status work.

Work status: ab  
**0006 n ABCDEFGHIJN r**

[ Details ]

**2** Press [OK]. Job Status is displayed and a list of job numbers and names currently printed or waiting to print is displayed. The job type and results are also indicated for each job using icons.

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the name of the job to view the details of.

**0006 Details: P b**  
 Job name: 1/6  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTN

[ Details ]

**4** Touch [Detail] ([Right Select]). The Details screen is displayed.

The detailed job status log includes 6 pages in total. Press  $\bar{y}$  to display the next page or  $\bar{y}$  to return to the previous page.

Press [OK] to return to the Job Status menu.

If the full name for Job Name does not fit on one line, press [Detail] ([Right Select]) to switch to the 3-line name display.

**0006 Details: P b**  
 Job name: 1/6  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTN

[ Details ]

Press [OK] when the name display is 3 lines to return to the single line display.

Details: O b  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU  
 VWXYZabcdefghijklmnop  
 rstuvwxyz1234567890

## Work log

You can use the Job Log to check the history of jobs that have already finished printing.

Along with jobs printed from computers, this log also displays the results of jobs printed directly from USB memory and reports such as status pages.

It is possible to consult the log of the 100 most recent jobs.

The information available in the Job Log is shown below.

Element	Contents	Results displayed		
		Screen	Icon	Description
job name	Job name Job name			job name
Results	Job Status OK		u	Completed normally
		Mistake	in	Mistake
		to cancel	t	Job cancelled.
Type trav.	Type of work	Printer	n	Printed from PC
		Report	j	Report
		USB	Y	Printed from USB memory
		Box	i	Printed from Job Box
Hour of acceptance	Time to receipt of work	Day/Month/Year Hour:Minute† Month/Day/Year Hour:Minute† Year/Month/Day Hour:Minute†		
Username Printed	user name	username		
Printed Pages Printed	Pages ***Page(s)			page name
		***/**		Copies Made/Copies Specified

† Display differs by country or region.

<p>Log work: ab 0006 n ABCDEFGHIJN v</p> <p>[ Details ]</p>
---

1 In the Status menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Journal works.

2 Press [OK]. Job Log is displayed with the job numbers of completed jobs and the list of job names. The job type and result for each job is also shown as icons.

3 Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select the name of the job to view the details of.

**0006 Details: P b**  
 Job name: 1/6  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTN  
 [ Details ]

**Details: O b**  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU  
 VWXYZabcdefghijklmnop  
 qrstuvwxyz1234567890

**4 Touch [Detail] ([Right Select]).** The Details screen is displayed.

The detailed work log includes 6 pages in total. Press  $\bar{y}$  to display the next page or  $\bar{y}$  to return to the previous page.

Press [OK] to return to the Job Log menu.

If the full name for Job Name does not fit on one line, press [Detail] ([Right Select]) to switch to the 3-line name display.

## Clavier USB

When a USB keyboard is connected, it is possible to check whether the USB keyboard can be used.

**1** In the Status menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Clavier USB.

**2** Press [OK]. If the USB keyboard is available for use, Available is displayed.

**Clavier USB: b**  
 Available

## wireless network

When the optional wireless network interface kit is installed, it is possible to check the status of the wireless network.



Note Wireless Network is displayed only when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

**1** In the Status menu, push  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$  to select Network wireless.

**2** Press [OK]. The wireless network status is displayed.

**Wireless network: Pb**  
 State: 1/2  
 Connected

**3** Press  $\bar{y}$  or  $\bar{y}$ . The name res. (SSID) is displayed.

**Wireless network: Pb**  
 Name res. (SSID): 2/2  
 ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTN  
 [ Details ]

Details: O b  
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNQRSTU  
VWXYZabcdefghijklmnop  
qrstuvwxyz1234567890

If the full name for the Res. (SSID) does not fit on one line,  
press [Detail] ([Right Select]) to switch to 3-line name display.

# 7 Maintenance

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

Replacing the toner cartridge.....	7 -2
Replacing the Waste Toner Box.....	7-6
Cleaning the printer .....	7-8

## Replacing the toner cartridge

The toner cartridge in the printer should be replaced as soon as the message says **Toner soon empty**, or soon after. If you continue to use the printer, the toner supply may run out and the printer will stop printing to display the **Replace Toner** message. Clean the printer telling you to install a new toner kit.

## Toner cartridge replacement frequency

The life of toner cartridges depends on the amount of toner needed to complete the print job. In accordance with ISO/IEC 19752 and with the EcoPrint function disabled, the toner cartridge can perform the following prints (on A4/Letter paper): 12,500 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 15,500 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 4100DN), 21,000 frames (FS-4200DN for USA) or 25,000 frames (FS-4200DN for countries other than USA and FS-4300DN).

## Starter toner cartridge

The toner cartridge supplied with the printer is a starter toner cartridge. Starter toner cartridge lasts an average of 6000 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 8000 images (FS-4100DN) or 10,000 images (FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN).



**Note Memory Chip Information Collection** - The memory chip attached to the toner cartridge is designed to improve end-user convenience, to aid in the recycling operation of used toner cartridges, and to collect information useful for planning and developing new products. The information collected is anonymous - it cannot be associated with any particular individual and the data is intended for anonymous use.

## Toner sets

For best results, we recommend using only genuine Kyocera parts and supplies. Any damage caused by the application of toner different from the original toner will be excluded from the warranty.

A new toner kit contains the following items:

- Toner cartridge
- Plastic bags for collecting the waste toner cartridge and waste toner box
- Waste toner box
- Guide d'installation



**Note** Store the toner cartridge in its shipping carton until you are ready to install it in the printer.

## Replacing the toner cartridge

The toner cartridge in the printer should be replaced as soon as the message says **Toner soon empty**, or soon after. If you continue to use the printer, the toner supply may run out and the printer will stop printing to display the **Replace Toner** message. Clean the printer telling you to install a new toner kit.

## Toner cartridge replacement frequency

The life of toner cartridges depends on the amount of toner needed to complete the print job. In accordance with ISO/IEC 19752 and with the EcoPrint function disabled, the toner cartridge can perform the following prints (on A4/Letter paper): 12,500 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 15,500 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 4100DN), 21,000 frames (FS-4200DN for USA) or 25,000 frames (FS-4200DN for countries other than USA and FS-4300DN).

## Starter toner cartridge

The toner cartridge supplied with the printer is a starter toner cartridge. Starter toner cartridge lasts an average of 6000 images (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN), 8000 images (FS-4100DN) or 10,000 images (FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN).



**Note Memory Chip Information Collection** - The memory chip attached to the toner cartridge is designed to improve end-user convenience, to aid in the recycling operation of used toner cartridges, and to collect information useful for planning and developing new products. The information collected is anonymous - it cannot be associated with any particular individual and the data is intended for anonymous use.

## Toner sets

For best results, we recommend using only genuine Kyocera parts and supplies. Any damage caused by the application of toner different from the original toner will be excluded from the warranty.

A new toner kit contains the following items:

- Toner cartridge
- Plastic bags for collecting the waste toner cartridge and waste toner box
- Waste toner box
- Guide d'installation



**Note** Store the toner cartridge in its shipping carton until you are ready to install it in the printer.

## Replacing the toner cartridge

This section describes the procedure for replacing toner cartridges. When you replace the toner cartridge, always replace the waste toner box at the same time. Indeed, when it is full, the used toner may overflow and damage the printer.



**CAUTION** Do not attempt to incinerate the toner cartridge. Dangerous sparks can cause burns.

**IMPORTANT** When replacing the toner cartridge, temporarily move storage media and computer supplies (such as floppy disks and USB memories) away from the toner cartridge. This will prevent them from being damaged by the magnetism of the toner.

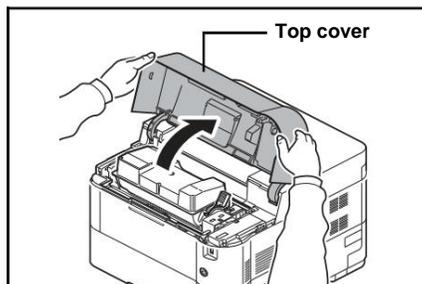
**IMPORTANT** Always clean the inside of the printer after replacing the toner cartridge. For more information, refer to *Cleaning the Printer* on page 7-8.

**IMPORTANT** Kyocera Document Solutions Inc. assumes no responsibility for any damage or problems caused by the use of toner cartridges other than original Kyocera toner cartridges. For best performance, it is also recommended to use only Kyocera toner cartridges specifically designed for use in your country or region. If a toner cartridge for another destination is installed, the printer will stop printing.

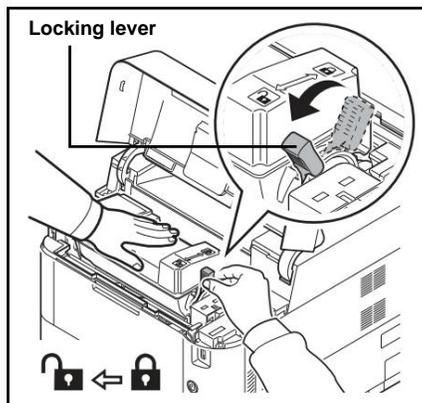
**IMPORTANT** Before replacing the toner cartridge, remove the paper from the MP tray.



**Note** It is not necessary to turn off the printer to perform the replacement. If you turn it off, all data currently being processed in the printer will be deleted.

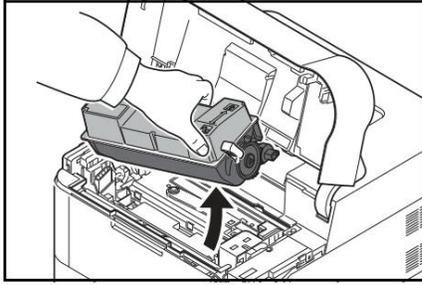


**1** Open the top cover.

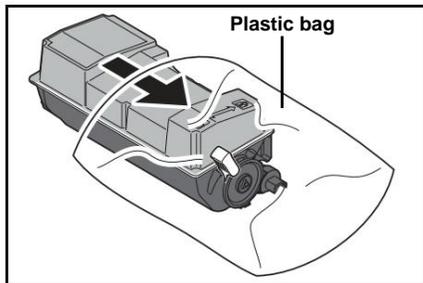


**2** Turn the lock lever to the unlock position.

- 3 Carefully remove the used toner cartridge from the printer.**



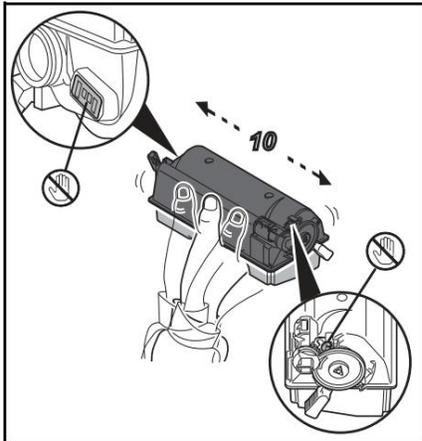
- 4 Place the used toner cartridge in the plastic bag (provided in the toner kit) and dispose of it according to local regulations.**



- 5 Take out the new cartridge from the toner kit.**

- 6 Shake the new cartridge at least 10 times to distribute the toner evenly inside the cartridge, as shown in the illustration.**

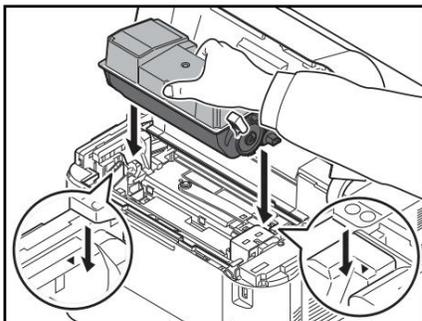
Do not press hard on the center of the toner cartridge and do not touch the toner supply slot.



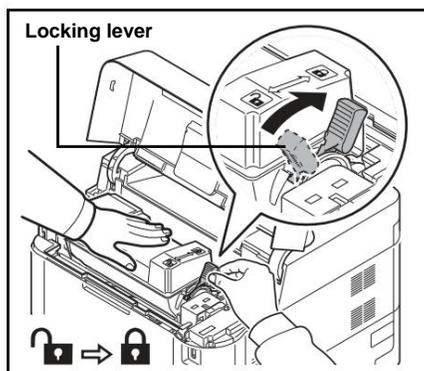
**IMPORTANT** Do not touch the part of the toner cartridge shown in the diagram.

Do not touch the electrical parts of the toner cartridge to avoid damaging them with static electricity.

- 7 Place the new toner cartridge in the printer as illustrated in the figure.**



- 8 Push the top of the toner cartridge to install it properly.**



**9 Turn the lock lever to the lock position.**

**10 Close the top cover.**



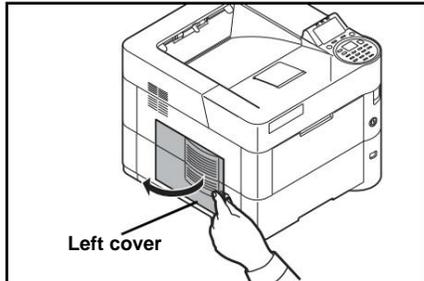
**Note** If the top cover (top tray) does not close, check that the new toner cartridge is installed correctly (see step 7).

After use, always dispose of the toner cartridge and waste toner box according to national and local regulations.

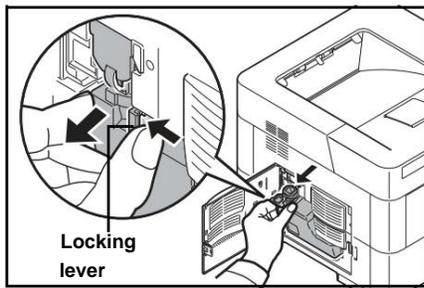
Go to the next section.

## Replacing the waste toner box

Replace the waste toner box when the message **Check the waste toner box.** is displayed. The toner kit contains a new waste toner box. The waste toner box must be replaced before the printer can be used.



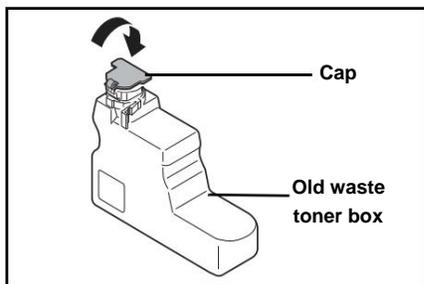
**1** Open the left cover.



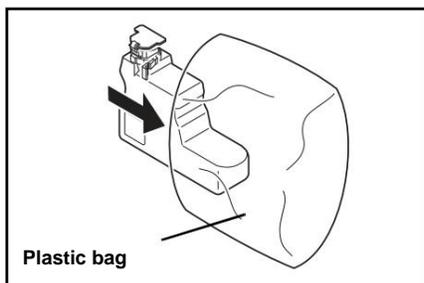
**2** While holding the waste toner box, press the lock lever, and then carefully pull the box out.



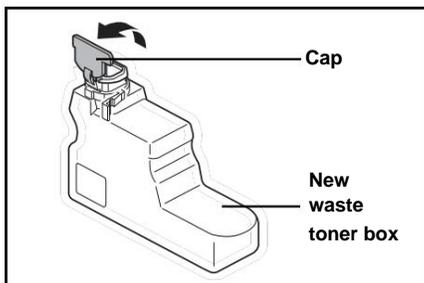
**Note** To avoid spilling toner inside the printer, remove the tray as gently as possible. Be careful not to point the tray opening downward.



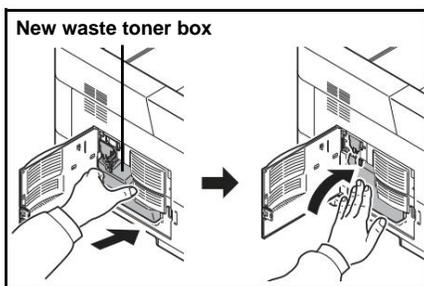
**3** Close the waste toner box cap after removing the box from the printer.



**4** To avoid spilling the toner, place the waste toner container in the plastic bag (provided in the toner kit) and dispose of it according to local regulations.



**5** Open the cap of the new waste toner box.



**6** Insert the new waste toner box as shown in the illustration. Once positioned correctly, it snaps into place.

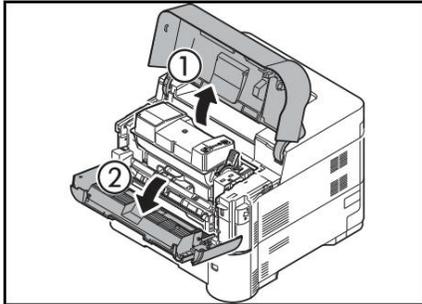
**7** Make sure that the waste toner box is properly inserted and close the left cover.

After replacing the toner cartridge and waste toner box, clean the paper transfer unit. For more information, see [Cleaning the Printer](#) on page 7-8.

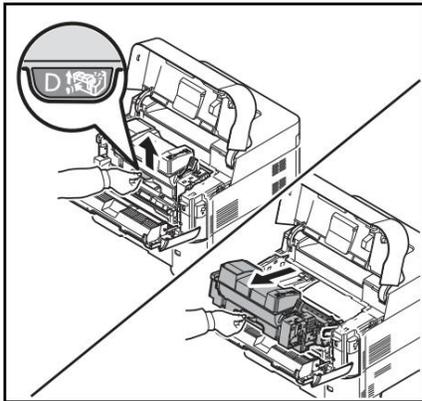
## Printer cleaning

To avoid print quality problems, it is necessary to clean the inside of the printer each time the toner cartridge is replaced.

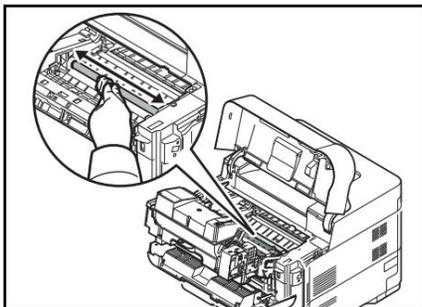
**IMPORTANT** Before cleaning the printer, remove the paper from the MP tray.



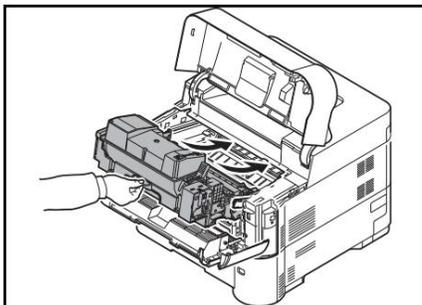
**1** Open the top cover and the front cover.



**2** Take out the developer together with the toner cartridge.

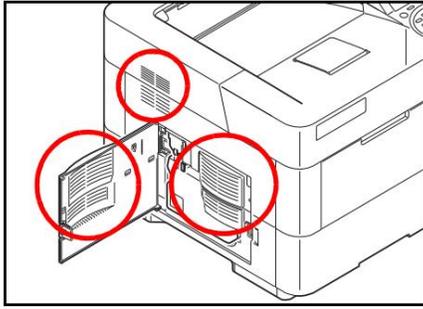


**3** Use a lint-free cloth to dust and clean the registration roll.



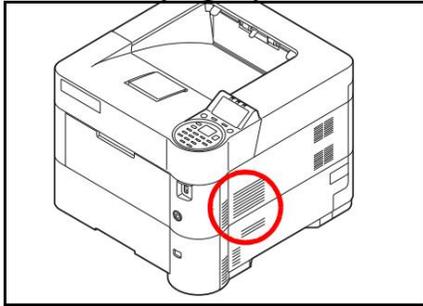
**4** Put the developer and the toner cartridge back in the machine.

**5** Close the front cover and the top cover.



**6** Open the left cover. Use a lint-free cloth to dust and clean the vents.

**7** Close the left cover.



**8** Use a lint-free cloth to dust and clean the ventilation holes on the right side of the machine.

## Prolonged disuse and moving the printer

### Prolonged non-use

If you will not be using the printer for a long time, remove the power cord from the power outlet.

We recommend that you consult your dealer for additional measures you need to take to avoid damage when you use the printer next time.

### Moving the printer

When moving the printer:

- Move it with care.
- Hold it as straight as possible and avoid spilling the toner inside the printer.
- Be sure to consult a service technician before transporting the printer on a long distance.
- Store the printer horizontally.



**WARNING** If you are shipping the printer, remove and wrap the developer in a plastic bag and ship the printer separately.

## 8 Troubleshooting

---

This chapter covers the following topics:

General recommendations.....	8-2
Print Quality Problems .....	8-4 Error
Messages .....	8-6
Clearing paper jams .....	8-18

If you are unable to resolve a problem, call a service technician.

## General recommendations

The table below provides basic solutions to problems that may occur with the printer. It is recommended to consult it to solve the problems before calling a technician.

Problem	Things to check	Action corrective
Print quality is poor. Refer to Print Quality Problems on page 8-4.		
Paper jam.	Refer to Clearing Paper Jams on page 8-18.	
No lights come on on the control panel and the fans do not make any noise while the printer is powered on.	Check the power cord connection.	Unplug the power cord and plug it back in, then try turning the printer back on.  If the above corrective action does not solve the problem, unplug the power cord from the outlet. Wait at least 1 minute, then plug the power cord back into the outlet and try to turn on the printer again.
		Press the power switch.
The printer prints a status page, but it does not print jobs initiated from the computer.	Check the printer cable and interface cable.	Check if both ends of the printer cable are plugged in. Try replacing the printer cable or interface cable.
	Check program files and software applications.	Try printing another file or using another command printing. If the problem only occurs with a specific file or application, check the printer settings for that application.
The printer emits steam in the area around the top platen.	Check if the room temperature is low or if damp paper has been used.	Depending on the printing environment and paper conditions, the heat generated during printing may cause the moisture in the paper to evaporate and the vapor emitted may look like smoke. This is not a problem and you can continue printing.  If you are concerned about steam, raise the room temperature or replace the paper with new, dry paper.

## Tips

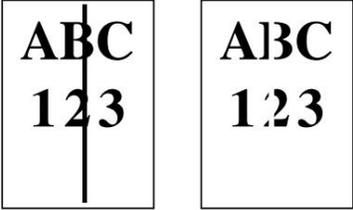
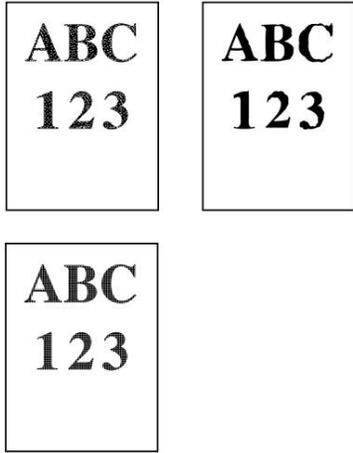
Printing problems can be solved easily by following the tips below. If the recommendations above did not resolve the issue you are experiencing, try the following:

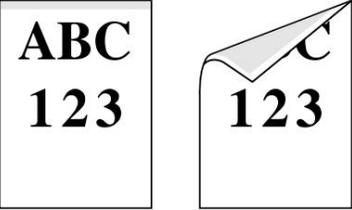
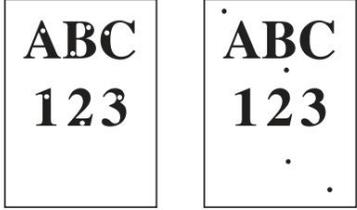
- Turn off the printer and wait a few seconds. Then turn the printer back on.
- Restart the computer that sends print jobs to the printer.
- Obtain the latest version of the printer driver and install it. The latest versions of drivers Printer software and utilities are available at <http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com>.
- Ensure printing procedures are followed in the application software. See the documentation provided with the application software.

## Print Quality Problems

The tables and illustrations in the following sections describe print-quality problems and the corrective actions you can take to resolve them. Some solutions may require cleaning or replacing parts of the printer.

If the suggested corrective action does not resolve the problem, contact a service technician.

Print result	Action corrective
<p>Black or white vertical lines The drum or developer may be damaged. If the problem is not solved even after printing several pages, contact a technician.</p> 	
<p>Faint or blurry print</p> 	<p>Check the EcoPrint settings. If enabled, disable it from the control panel.</p> <p>Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper you are using.</p> <p>Refresh the drum to restore print quality. For more information, see Param. service (for maintenance) on page 4-133.</p> <p>Then adjust the print density. For more information, see Print Density. (Selecting the Print Density) on page 4-51.</p> <p>If damp paper is loaded in the cassette or MP tray, replace the paper with newer, dry paper.</p> <p>If the problem is not solved using the corrective action above, contact a technician.</p>
<p>gray background</p> 	<p>Refresh the drum to restore print quality. For more information, see Param. service (for maintenance) on page 4-133.</p> <p>Then adjust the print density. For more information, see Print Density. (Selecting the Print Density) on page 4-51.</p> <p>If the problem is not solved using the corrective action above, contact a technician.</p>

Print result	Action corrective
<p>Dirt on the top edge or back of the sheet of paper</p> 	<p>If the problem is not solved even after printing several pages, clean the registration roller. For more information, see <a href="#">Cleaning the Printer on page 7-8</a>. If the problem is not solved after cleaning, contact a technician.</p>
<p>Incomplete or misaligned printing</p> 	<p>Check if the application software is used correctly. Refer to <a href="#">Tips on page 8-3</a>.</p>
<p>The altitude is greater than or equal to 1500 m and the prints show deposits or scattered spots.</p> 	<p>Change the Altitude Adj. in the Service Settings menu and choose High 1. If there is no improvement, change the setting and choose High 2. For more information, see <a href="#">Param. service (for maintenance) on page 4-133</a>.</p>

## Error Messages

The following table lists error and maintenance messages that you can handle yourself. If the message Machine error. Call Technician appears, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and call a service technician.

If the message Machine error. Call technician. or Error. Turn off and then turn on the device appears, turn the printer off and then on to see if the printer recovers. If the printer does not recover, turn off the printer, unplug the power cord, and contact a service technician or authorized service center.

Some errors can trigger the audible alarm. To stop it, press [Cancel].

Message	Action corrective
<p>Admin rights. machine are required.</p>	<p>Settings can only be changed after logging in with machine administrator privileges.</p>
<p>Access denied. You can not log in.</p>	<p>The login operation has failed for the specified number of attempts and it is no longer possible to login. Contact a system administrator.</p>
<p>The access point not been detected.</p>	<p>It was not possible to connect to the network with the optional wireless network interface kit. Check the wireless network interface kit settings. For more information, refer to Optional Network (Optional Network Settings) on page 4-64.</p>
<p>Account error. Press [OK].</p>	<p>This message is displayed when the job accounting feature is enabled and an attempt to specify job accounting settings or to register or delete an account fails. To return the printer to the Ready state, press [OK].</p>

Message	Action corrective
Aj. paper au mag. #	There is no more paper in the indicated paper source. Put paper in the indicated source (paper cassette, multi-purpose tray, or optional paper feeders).
Aj. au by-pass paper	
Administrator uniquely.	Settings can only be changed after logging in with administrator privileges.
Alternative: <b>A A5</b> hardcover <b>B A5</b> Normal <b>C A4</b> Préimpr.	When the tray does not contain paper that matches the print data (paper size and type), this message allows you to specify an alternate tray to use instead. A paper source number is displayed only when an optional paper feeder is installed. To print from a different paper source, see Paper Feed Mode (Selecting the Paper Feed Source) on page 4-41.
box limit exceeded.	The capacity of the box has been reached. Delete files or change box capacity. For more information, refer to Using Custom Box (Creating, Editing, and Deleting Box) on page 5-5.
Cancelation...	Displayed when data is being deleted.
Connexion impossible.	It was not possible to connect to the network with the optional wireless network interface kit. Check the wireless network interface kit settings. For more information, refer to Optional Network (Optional Network Settings) on page 4-64.

Message	Action corrective
<p>Connection to the server d'authent. impossible Check the name of domain.</p>	<p>Press [OK] and check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Registration on the authentication server</li> <li>• Password and computer address for the authentication server</li> <li>• Network connection</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see section Par. auth. res. (Network Authentication Setting) on page 4-115.</p>
<p>Connexion impossible. Several points access are enabled.</p>	<p>Multiple access points have been detected with the optional wireless network interface kit. Check the wireless network interface kit settings. For more information, refer to Optional Network (Optional Network Settings) on page 4-64.</p>
<p>Print rect. towards. impossible on this paper</p>	<p>You attempted to print with a paper size and type that cannot be used for duplex printing. Press [OK] to print on one side of the paper only.</p>
<p>Unable to run this work. Limit by parameters authorization.</p>	<p>This message is displayed when operations are restricted in the account on which job accounting is effective. To modify the account parameters, refer to the Detail/Modify section. (Checking/changing registered account ID settings) on page 4-129.</p>
<p>Unable to execute.</p>	<p>Cleaning cannot be performed because a job is being processed, etc.</p>
<p>Imposs. to remove the mem during use.</p>	<p>This message is displayed when Remove memory was selected while using USB memory. The previous screen is displayed again for 1 or 2 seconds.</p>
<p>Magazine # not loaded.</p>	<p>The corresponding paper tray is not installed. Install it. This can be cassette 1 (upper), 2, 3 or 4 (lower).</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Check store #.</p>	<p>This message is displayed when a paper lift error has occurred in the source paper tray. Open the tray for the displayed paper source (the paper trays or optional paper feeders) and check that the paper is loaded correctly.</p> <p>The message Call technician. is displayed when this error repeats.</p>
<p>Check the tray toner recovery.</p>	<p>This warning message is displayed in the two cases listed below. Install a new waste toner box. The waste toner box is not installed. The waste toner box is full. For more information, refer to Replacing the Waste Toner Box on page 7-6.</p>
<p>Close left cover.</p>	<p>The left printer cover is open. Close the left cover.</p>
<p>Close the back cover.</p>	<p>The printer back cover is open. Close the back cover.</p>
<p>Close top cover.</p>	<p>The printer's top cover is open. Close it.</p>
<p>The developer is not installed.</p>	<p>The developer is not installed or is not installed correctly. Insert the developer correctly. Contact your service representative.</p>
<p>The drum is not installed.</p>	<p>The drum unit is not installed or is not installed correctly. Insert the drum correctly. Contact your service representative.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Include address IPv6 entre hooks [ ].</p>	<p>The IPv6 address entered in the host name is not enclosed in square brackets [ ]. To enter the IPv6 address, insert the address in square brackets [ ] (par ex. [3ae3:9a0:cd05:b1d2:28a:1fc0:a1:10ae]:140).</p>
<p>Envelope mode.</p>	<p>Displayed when envelope selectors are set to envelope mode.</p>
<p>Mistake Turn off, then <b>turn the device back on.</b> ####</p>	<p>Press the power switch to turn the machine off, then press it again to turn it back on. If this message remains, press the power button to turn off the device and contact a service technician.</p>
<p>Unable to get information from network user.</p>	<p>An error occurred while getting user information after authentication. Reconnect.</p>
<p>File deleted. Check the box toner recovery.</p>	<p>The selected file or box does not exist. Check that the box has not been deleted or that the file has not been deleted or moved.</p>
<p>Formater carte SD.</p>	<p>The SD/SDHC memory card installed in the printer is not formatted and cannot be read or written. To format an SD/SDHC memory card, follow the procedure in Format SD card (Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card) on page 4-86.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Format SSD.</p>	<p>The SSD (HD-6) installed in the printer is not formatted and cannot be read or written. To format an SSD, follow the procedure in Format SSD (SSD formatting) on page 4-86.</p>
<p>fuser unit is not installed.</p>	<p>The fuser unit is not installed or is not installed correctly. Insert the fuser correctly. Contact your service representative.</p>
<p>Invalid account ID.</p>	<p>Account ID does not match. Check registered account ID. For more information, see Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings) on page 4-125.</p>
<p>Invalid account ID. Press [OK].</p>	<p>This message is displayed when the job accounting function is enabled and no account is set for a transmitted print job or the specified account is not registered (the wrong account is set). To return the printer to the Ready state, press [OK]. For more information, see Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings) on page 4-125.</p>
<p>Incorrect ID.</p>	<p>The user ID entered for a private job is incorrect. Check the ID listed on the printer driver.</p>
<p>Username or word of passe conn. incorrect</p>	<p>NTLM server rejected authentication. Enter the correct username and password.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Username or word of passe conn. incorrect Job cancelled.</p>	<p>Enter the correct login username and password.</p>
<p>Incorrect password.</p>	<p>Enter the correct password.</p>
<p>Limit exceeded counted. works. Press [OK].</p>	<p>This message is displayed when the job accounting function is enabled, in the event of an attempt to exceed the print limit set for each account. To return the printer to the Ready state, press [OK].</p> <p>For more information, see Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings) on page 4-125.</p>
<p>Unstored work. Press [OK].</p>	<p>Printing using the Custom Box function, and Box jobs failed due to lack of available space on the SSD, RAM disk, or SD/SDHC memory card or because the RAM disk was disabled while unmounting the SSD. To print an error report and return the printer to the Ready state, press [OK].</p>
<p>KPDL error. Press [OK].</p>	<p>Printer processing is halted because a KPDL error has occurred. To print an error report, display KPDL Error Rpt from the menu system and select On. Press [OK] to resume printing. You can abort printing by pressing [Cancel]. If the Correc. Auto Error is set to On, printing will resume automatically after a preset period.</p>
<p>Limit exceeded. Unable to add any further.</p>	<p>The added box exceeds the maximum number of boxes. Delete unnecessary boxes. For more information, refer to Using Custom Box (Creating, Editing, and Deleting Box) on page 5-5.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Load paper into store #. A4</p> <p style="text-align: center;">↓ ↑</p> <p>paper size different set. Check the format of the paper.</p>	<p>The paper size in the tray and the paper size on the paper size dial are not the same. Check the paper size.</p>
<p>Load paper into store #. A4 Normal</p>	<p>The tray containing the size and type of paper required for the requested print job is empty. Load paper in the tray indicated instead of #. Press [OK] to resume printing. If you want to print from another paper source, press [Alt] ([Left Select]) to display Alternative: and change the paper source. You can abort printing by pressing [Cancel].</p>
<p>Load paper into by-pass. A4 Normal</p>	<p>No tray containing the type and size of paper required for the requested print job is installed. Load paper in the multi-purpose tray. Press [OK] to resume printing. (Do not load the MP tray with a paper size different from the size set for this tray, otherwise a paper jam may occur.) If you want to print from another paper source, press [Alt] ([Left Select]) to display Alternative: and change the paper source. You can abort printing by pressing [Cancel].</p>
<p>Paper loading.</p>	<p>The selected tray is being prepared.</p>
<p>Weak Security</p>	<p>This message is displayed when Low has been selected in the security level.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Machine error. Call technician.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>####:0123456</b></p>	<p><b>####</b> represents a mechanical error (#=0, 1, 2, ...). Call a service technician. The printer does not work when this message is displayed. The total number of printed pages is also indicated, for example 0123456.</p>
<p>Match kind paper and position wrap switch</p>	<p>Displayed when the paper type does not match the envelope selector setting.</p>
<p>Memory full. The work. printing cannot be completed.</p>	<p>The total amount of data received by the printer exceeds the printer's internal memory. Increase memory. Press [OK] to resume printing. You can abort printing by pressing [Cancel]. If the Correc. Auto Error is set to On, printing will resume automatically after a preset period.</p>
<p>No multi copies. Press [OK].</p>	<p>Multiple copies could not be printed because the RAM disk is disabled or the SSD is not installed. Try adding more memory or installing an SSD, then configuring the RAM disk settings.</p>
<p>Toner non original. Press [Help].</p>	<p>This message is displayed if the installed toner cartridge is not original. The manufacturer accepts no responsibility for damage caused by non-original toner. We recommend using only toner cartridges originals. To use the currently installed toner cartridge, press [OK] and [Cancel] simultaneously for at least 3 seconds.</p>
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div> <p>Jammed paper <b>#####</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p> </div> </div>	<p>A paper jam occurred. The location of the paper jam is shown instead of #. For more information, see Clearing Paper Jams on page 8-18.</p>
<p>Paper path error. Place the store.</p>	<p>There is no cassette in the loader or it is not inserted correctly. After inserting the cassette again, you should be able to print. If two or more optional feeders are installed and the lower feeder is selected, the same message is displayed if one of the feeders or the printer cassette is not installed correctly.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>Cap. print exceeded.</p>	<p>The data sent to the printer was too complex to print on one page. Press [OK] to resume printing.</p>
<p>RAM disk error. Press [OK].</p> <p style="text-align: right;">##</p>	<p>An error has occurred in the RAM disk. Note the error code shown in place of ##.</p> <p>The possible error codes and their meanings are as follows.</p> <p>02: RAM disk mode is Disabled. set the parameter to Enabled. Refer to RAM Disk Mode (RAM Disk Settings) on page 4-85.</p> <p>03: The RAM disk is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p> <p>04: Insufficient disk space. Purge unnecessary files or increase RAM disk size. For more information, see Dim RAM Disk (Setting the RAM disk size) on page 4-85.</p> <p>05: The desired file does not exist on the RAM disk. Store the file on the RAM disk.</p> <p>10: The file stored in the RAM disk is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p>
<p>Exceeding of registered numbers. Unable to add.</p>	<p>There are already 100 registered accounts and it is no longer possible to register new accounts.</p>
<p>Replace MK.</p>	<p>Replace the maintenance kit displayed on the screen. Replacement of the maintenance kit is required every 500,000 images (or every 300,000 images on FS 2100D/FS-2100DN) and requires professional intervention.</p>
<p>Replace toner.</p>	<p>The cartridge is out of toner. Replace it with a new toner kit. The printer does not work when this message is displayed.</p>
<p>Limited by Account. works Press [OK].</p>	<p>This message is displayed when attempting to print when the job accounting function is enabled with a restriction applied as the job limit for each job account.</p> <p>To return the printer to the Ready state, press [OK].</p> <p>For more information, see Job Accounting Settings (Job Accounting Settings) on page 4-125.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>SD card error. Press [OK].</p> <p style="text-align: right;">##</p>	<p>An error has occurred on the SD/SDHC memory card. Note the error code shown in place of ##.</p> <p>The possible error codes and their meanings are as follows.</p> <p>02: The printer does not support the inserted SD/SDHC memory card or the SD/SDHC memory card is defective. Install SD memory card/ Correct SDHC.</p> <p>03: The SD/SDHC memory card is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p> <p>04: There is not enough space on the SD/SDHC memory card. Delete unnecessary files or use a new SD/SDHC memory card.</p> <p>05: The desired file does not exist on the SD/SDHC memory card. Store the file on the SD/SDHC memory card.</p> <p>10: The file stored in the SD/SDHC memory card is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p>
<p>SSD error. Press [OK].</p> <p style="text-align: right;">##</p>	<p>An SSD error has occurred. Note the error code shown in place of ##.</p> <p>The possible error codes and their meanings are as follows.</p> <p>03: The SSD is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p> <p>04: Insufficient space on the SSD. Delete unnecessary files and other items to free up space.</p> <p>05: The desired file does not exist on the SSD. Store the file on the SSD.</p> <p>10: The file stored on the SSD is write-protected with the command operation. Remove write protection with command.</p>
<p>The file name Already exists. Unable to copy.</p>	<p>Copying is not possible because data with the same file name already exists on the destination. Delete data with the same file name on the destination before copying.</p>
<p>Username is not registered.</p>	<p>The entered login user name is not saved. Check the login user name.</p>
<p>This Account ID is already registered.</p>	<p>The defined account ID has already been registered. Register a different account ID.</p>

Message	Action corrective
<p>This login username is already registered.</p>	<p>The changed login user name has already been registered. Set a different login user name.</p>
<p>Toner soon empty.</p>	<p>The toner is nearly exhausted. Make sure that a new toner cartridge is available without delay. For more information, refer to Replacing the Toner Cartridge on page 7-2.</p>
<p>Plateau sup. plein the paper. Remove the paper.</p>	<p>The top tray is full full (approximately 250 (FS-2100D and FS-2100DN) or 500 (FS-4100DN, FS-4200DN and FS-4300DN) pages). Remove all printed pages from the top tray. When the printer detects that the top tray is empty again, it resumes printing.</p>
<p>brand consumable unknown installed. computer</p>	<p>This message is displayed if the regional specification of the installed toner cartridge does not match that of the machine. Install the specified toner cartridge.</p>
<p>USB memory error. Press [OK].  ##</p>	<p>An error has occurred in the USB memory device. Note the error code shown in place of ##. The possible error codes and their meanings are as follows. 01: The amount of data that can be saved at one time has been exceeded. Split the big file into several smaller files. The USB memory is write-protected. Remove write protection. The USB memory has failed. Even if the problem is not solved, format the USB memory with the machine or use the new USB memory compatible with the printer. 04: Insufficient space. Delete unnecessary files and other items to free up space.</p>

## Clearing Paper Jams

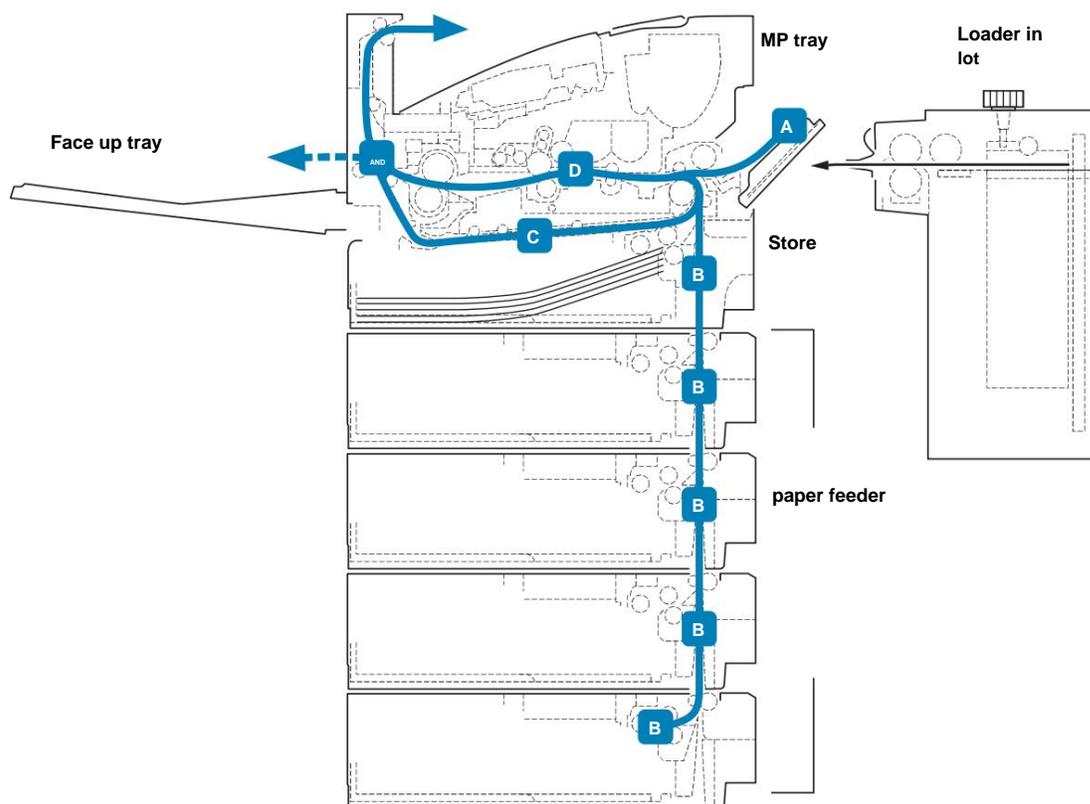
If a paper jam occurs in the paper transfer unit or if no paper is fed, the message Paper Jam appears along with the location of the jam. Status Monitor or Command Center RX can indicate the location of the paper jam (the component in which the paper jam occurred). Clear the paper jam.

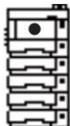
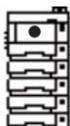
After clearing the paper jam, the printer resumes printing.

**IMPORTANT** The printer may not load paper correctly depending on the paper type. Print several pages to check if the printer can feed the paper. To feed the paper evenly, it is possible to select the half speed mode from the printer driver. For more information, see *Half Speed Mode (printer driver settings)* on page 3-8.

## Possible Paper Jam Locations

The illustration below shows the paper paths through the printer, including when the optional paper feeder is installed. Here you will find the locations where paper jams might occur, as well as a table describing each of the error messages. Paper jams can occur in multiple places along a single path.



Paper jam message	Incident paper principal	Description	Reference page
 <p><b>Jammed paper in bypass.</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>	A	Paper is jammed in the MP tray or optional bulk feeder.	page 8-20 page 8-24
 <p><b>Jammed paper in the bac G. C..</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>			
 <p><b>Jammed paper stuck in store #.</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>	B	Paper is jammed in the tray. This can be cassette 1 (upper), 2, 3 or 4 (lower).	page 8-21
 <p><b>Jammed paper in the unit in the right direction.</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>	C	Paper is jammed in the duplex unit.	page 8-22
 <p><b>Jammed paper in the printer</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>	D	Paper is jammed inside the printer.	page 8-23
 <p><b>Jammed paper in the unit back.</b></p> <p>[ Aide ]</p>	AND	Paper is jammed in the rear unit.	page 8-24

## General considerations for clearing paper jams

Remember the following considerations when trying to clear a paper jam:



**CAUTION** When pulling the paper, pull it gently so that it does not tear. Torn pieces of paper are difficult to remove and can be difficult to spot.

- If paper jams occur frequently, try changing to another type of paper, replacing the paper with paper from another ream, or turning over the stack of paper before feeding it into the printer. If paper jams persist despite these measures, the problem may be with the printer.
- Depending on the location of the paper jam, jammed pages may be reprinted when printing resumes.

## Using Online Help Messages

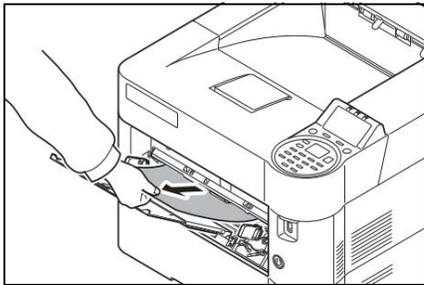
When Paper Jam is displayed, press [Help][Left Select] to display the procedure for clearing the jam.

Push  $\bar{y}$  to display the next step or push  $\bar{y}$  to display the previous step.

Press [OK] to exit the online help message display.

### MP tray

Paper is jammed in the multi-purpose tray. Remove the jammed paper by following the procedure below.

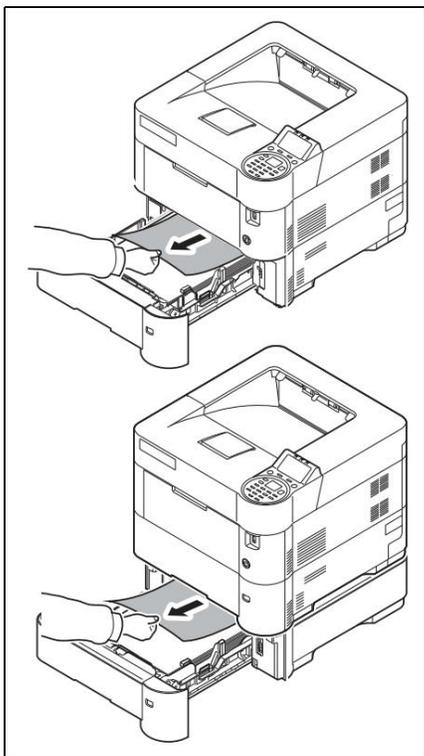


- 1 Remove the jammed paper from the multi-purpose tray.

**IMPORTANT** Before removing the jammed paper, remove the paper from the MP tray.

- 2 Open and close the top cover to clear the error.

## Paper tray/paper feeder



- 1 Pull out the optional paper tray or feeder.**
- 2 Remove any partially loaded sheets of paper.**

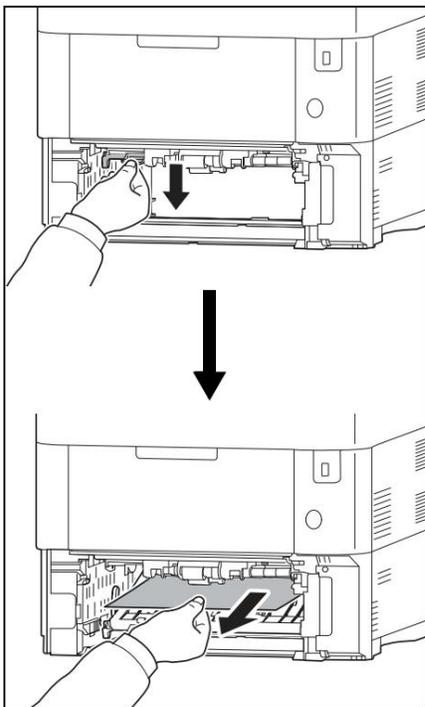


**Note** Check if the paper is loaded correctly, if not, reload it.

- 3 Reinsert the tray correctly. After the printer warms up, printing resumes.**

## Duplex unit

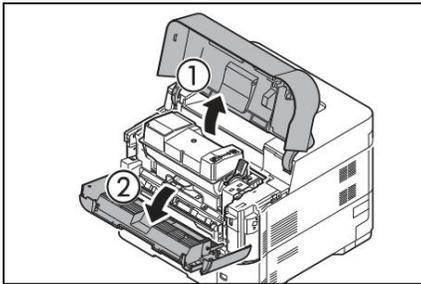
Paper is jammed in the duplex unit. Remove the jammed paper by following the procedure below.



- 1 Remove the magazine from the printer.
- 2 Open the front cover of the duplex unit and remove the jammed paper.

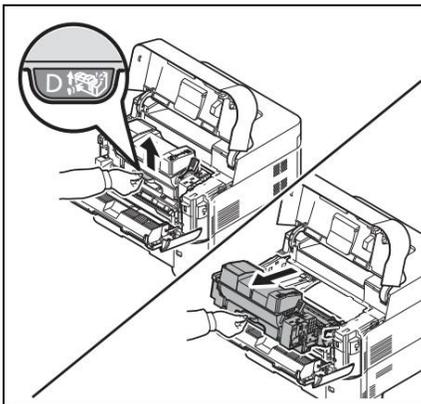
- 3 Close the front cover of the duplex unit.
- 4 Return the magazine to the printer. After preheating printer, printing resumes.

## Inside the printer

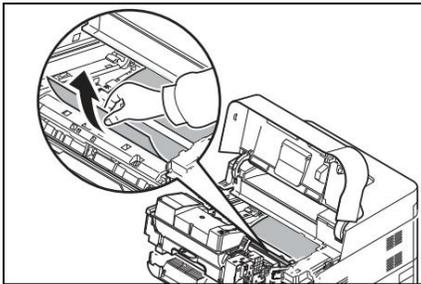


1 Open the top cover and the front cover.

**IMPORTANT** Before removing the jammed paper, remove the paper from the MP tray.



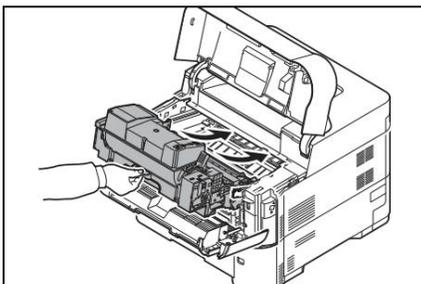
2 Take out the developer together with the toner cartridge.



3 Remove the paper from the printer.

If the paper seems stuck between the rollers, pull it in the direction of the paper flow.

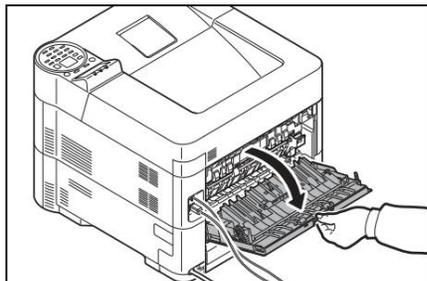
 **Note** If you cannot find a paper jam, check inside the printer at the back. Refer to Rear Unit on page 8-24.



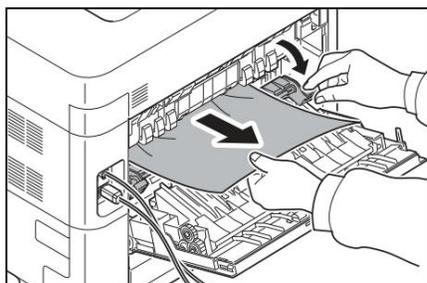
4 Put the developer and the toner cartridge back in the machine.

5 Close the front cover and the top cover. After preheating printer, printing resumes.

## rear unit



**1** If the paper is not fully ejected into the top tray, open the back cover.



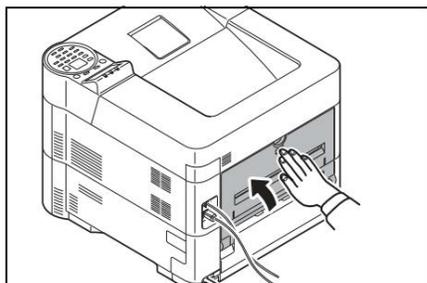
**2** Open the fuser cover and pull the paper out.



**Note** If you cannot find a paper jam, check inside the printer at the back.



**CAUTION** The fuser inside the printer is hot. Do not touch it with your hands, you risk burning yourself. Carefully remove the jammed paper.



**3** Close the back cover. The printer warms up and resumes printing.

## bulk loader

Paper is jammed in the optional bulk feeder. Detach the bulk feeder from the printer and hold it away from the printer with both hands. If the paper is partially engaged in the feeder exit slot, pull it out. For more information, refer to the PF-315+ Installation Guide.

# Annex

---

**This chapter covers the following topics:**

<b>Character input method .....</b>	<b>A-2</b>
<b>About options .....</b>	<b>A-5</b>
<b>Memory Expansion Modules.. .....</b>	<b>A-6</b>
<b>General description of the options .....</b>	<b>A-9</b>
<b>Paper.....</b>	<b>A-13</b>
<b>Specifications.....</b>	<b>A-24</b>

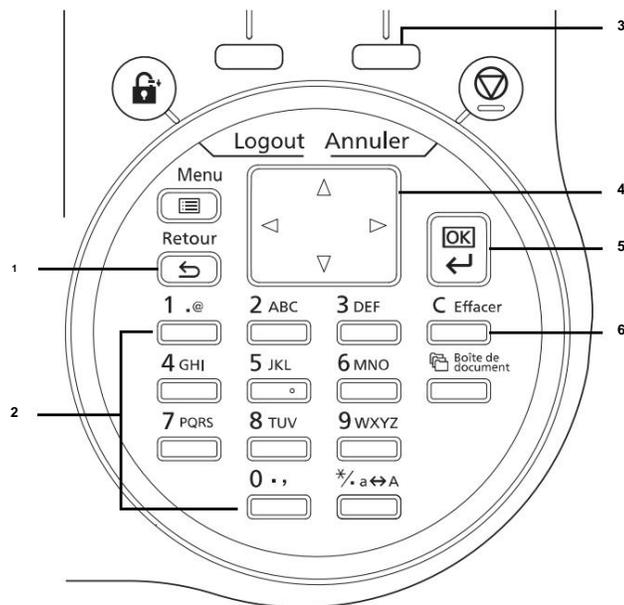
**For availability of options, contact your service technician.**

## Character input method

In character entry screens, use the procedure below to enter characters.

### Keys used

Use the following keys to enter characters.



**1 [Back] key:** Press this key to return to the screen where the character input screen was called up.

**2 Number keys:** Use these keys to select the character to be entered.

**3 [Right Select] key:** Press this key to select the type of character to be entered. (when [Text] is displayed)

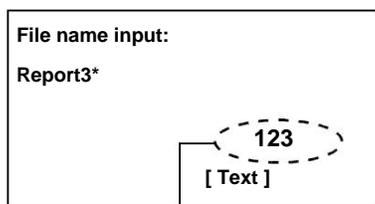
**4 Arrow keys:** Use these keys to select the entry position or select a character in the character list.

**5 [OK] key:** Press this key to confirm the character(s) entered.

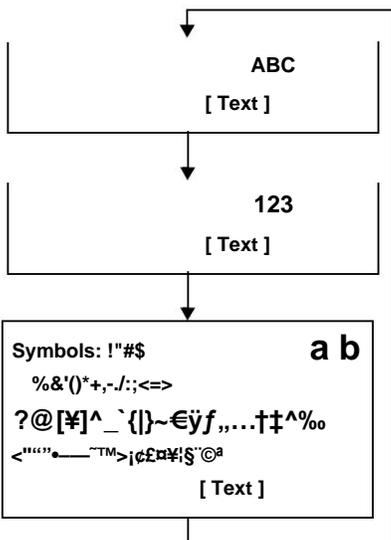
**6 [Clear] key:** Press this key to delete the character at the cursor position. If the cursor is at the end of the line, the character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

## Character type selection

To enter characters, the following three types are available:



Current character type



Types	Description
ABC	To enter letters.
123	To enter numbers.
Symbols	To enter symbols.

In a character input screen, press [Text] ([Right Select]) to select the type of character to be input.

Each press of [Text] ([Right Select]) changes the character type as follows: ABC, 123, Symbols, ABC ...

## Entering characters

After choosing the character type, use the procedure below to enter the characters.

### Entering letters and numbers

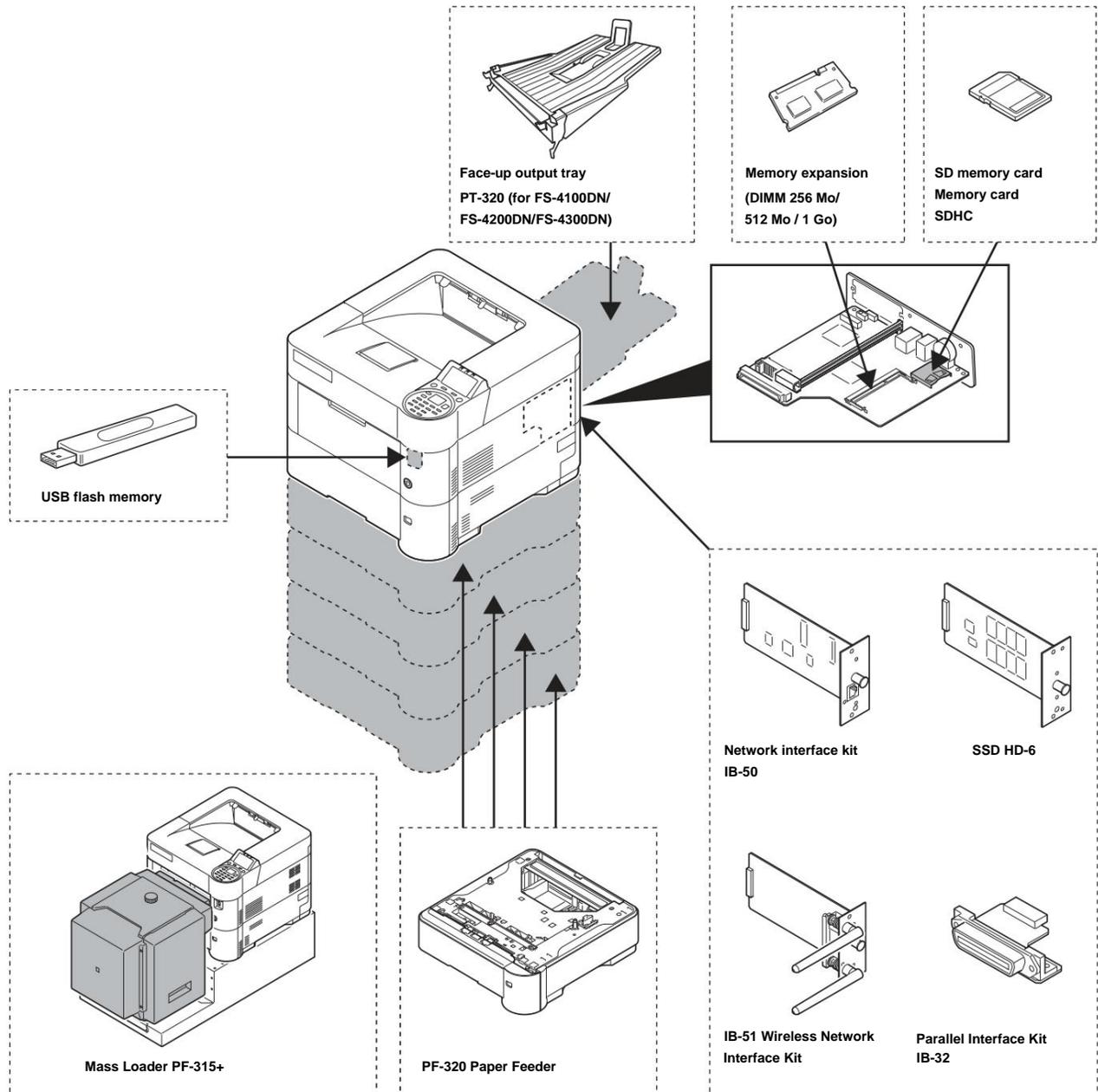
Referring to the table below, press the key corresponding to the character to be entered until it is displayed.

Touches	Input method	Available characters
1 _@ 	Letter/symbol	. @ - _ / : ~ 1
	Figure	1
2 ABC 	Letter/symbol	a b c A B C 2
	Figure	2
3 DEF 	Letter/symbol	d e f D E F 3
	Figure	3
4 GHI 	Letter/symbol	write WRITE 4
	Figure	4



## About options

The following options are available on the printer to suit your needs. For installation instructions for each option, see the documentation that accompanies each option. Some options are described in the following sections.



## Memory expansion modules

The main printer controller board has a memory slot where you can plug in optional memory modules (DIMMs). Printer memory can be increased to 1280 MB (or 1152 MB on FS-2100D) by plugging in optional memory modules.

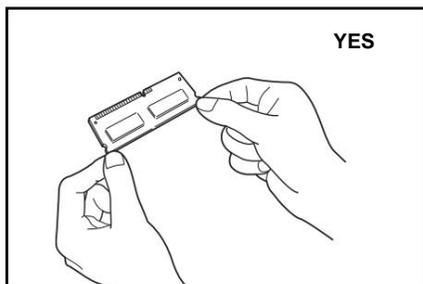
 **Note** A 256 MB (or 128 MB on FS-2100D) memory module is already installed at the factory. To increase memory to 1280 MB (or 1152 MB on FS-2100D), install a 1024 MB memory module.

### Memory expansion modules

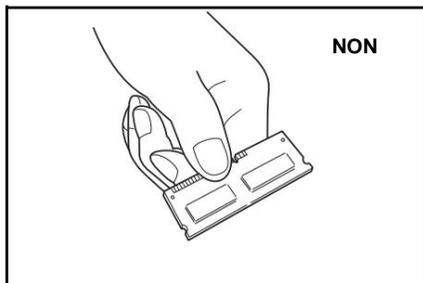
There are different memory module capacities: 256, 512 or 1024 MB.

### Precautions for Handling the Printer Main Controller Board and Memory Modules

To protect electronic components, discharge your body of static electricity by touching a large metal object before handling memory modules. Another solution is, if possible, to wear an antistatic wrist strap when installing memory modules.

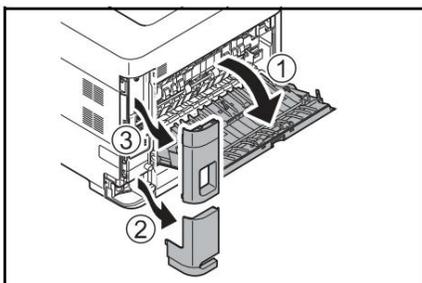


To avoid damaging the electronic components on the main controller board or memory modules, always hold them by the sides (see below).

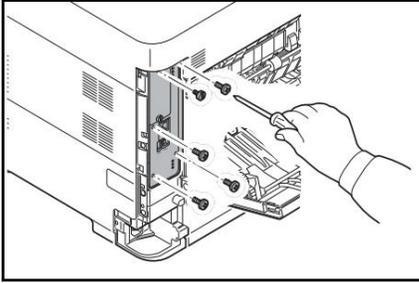


## Installing memory modules

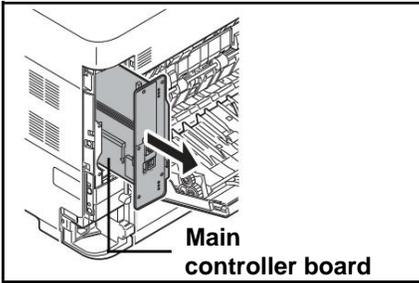
**1** Turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.



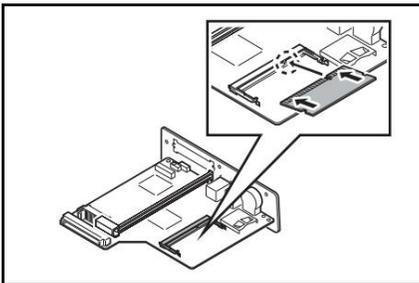
**2** Open the rear cover and remove the interface cover and the cover of the power cord connector.



**3** Unscrew the five screws on the back of the main controller board.



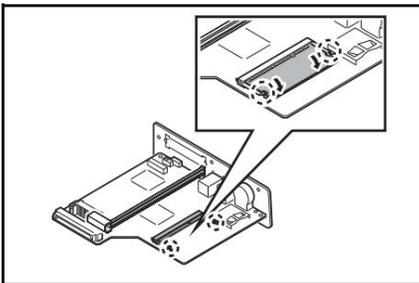
**4** Carefully pull out the main controller board.



**5** Remove the memory module from its packaging. Align them notches of the memory module on the corresponding keys of the memory slot, then push the memory module into the slot until it clicks into place.



**CAUTION** Do not connect the memory module backwards.



**6** Push in the memory module to secure it.

**7** After installing the memory modules, reseal the card main controller and secure it with the screws.

### Removing a memory module

To remove a memory module, remove the main controller board, then carefully spread apart the two retaining clips. Then simply extract the memory module from its location.

## Memory expansion check

After installing the memory expansion, use the following method to check if it is installed correctly.

- 1** From the Print Report menu, push **ÿ** or **ÿ** to select Status Page.
- 2** Press [OK]. A confirmation message appears.
- 3** Press [Yes] ([Left Select]). Accepted. is displayed and the printer prints a status page.

To print.  
Are you sure ?  
z Status page

[ Yes ]                      [ Non ]

Check the amount of memory with the printed status page. If the memory addition was done correctly, the total amount of memory has increased (the amount of memory when shipped from the factory is 256 MB (or 128 MB on FS-2100D)).

## General Description of Options

### SD/SDHC memory card

The printer is equipped with a slot for an SDHC memory card with a maximum size of 32 GB, and an SD memory card with a maximum size of 2 GB. An SD/SDHC memory card is useful for storing fonts, macros and watermarks.

Multiple copies can be printed at high speed using the electric sort function. You can also use Job Box functions. For more information, refer to Job Box on page 5-24.

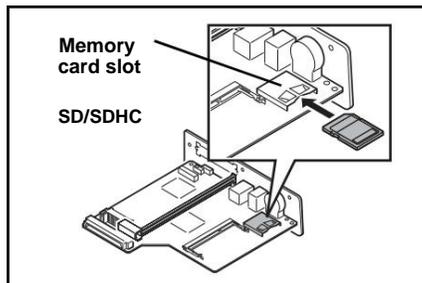
### SD/SDHC memory card playback

Once inserted into the printer slot, the contents of the SD/SDHC Memory Card can be read from the control panel or automatically when you turn on the power or reset the printer.

### Install and format the SD/SDHC memory card

To use an unused SD/SDHC Memory Card, you must first use the printer to format the SD/SDHC Memory Card.

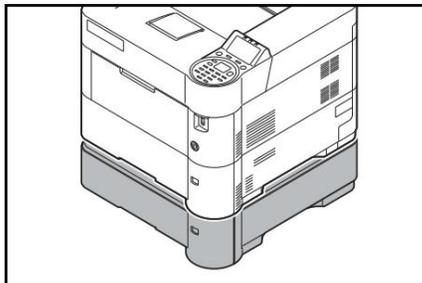
- 1 Turn off the printer, remove the power cord,**  
then remove the main controller unit. For instructions on how to remove the main controller unit, see the section on inserting the memory module.



- 2 Insert the SD/SDHC Memory Card into the Card Slot**  
SD/SDHC memory.

- 3 Attach the main controller unit to the printer following the**  
withdrawal procedure in reverse order.
- 4 Format the SD/SDHC Memory Card from the control panel**  
ordered. For the formatting procedure, refer to Format SD card (Formatting the SD/SDHC memory card) on page 4-86.

### PF-320 Paper Feeder



The optional paper feeder PF-320 holds approximately 500 sheets of paper. Up to 4 optional paper feeders can be added to the bottom of the printer to allow continuous feeding of up to 2500 sheets of paper in combination with the tray of the printer.

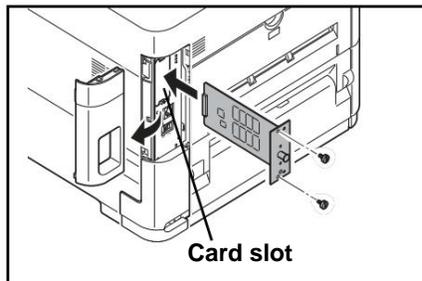
**IMPORTANT** When using the paper feeder, place the papers print side down.

The papers that can be used in the trays supplied with the paper feeders are as follows:

**Paper Size:** Monarch Envelope, #10 Envelope, #9 Envelope, #6 Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, A5, B5, B6, ISO B5, A4, Executive, Letter, Legal, OufukuHagaki, Oficio II, Statement, Folio, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, 216×340mm, 16K and Other (92×162mm to 216×356mm)

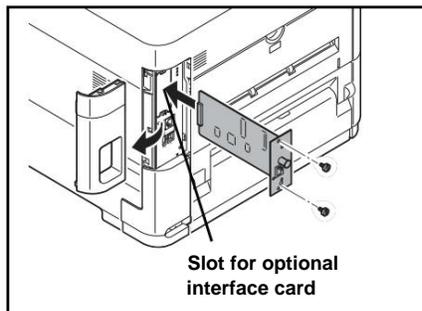
**Paper Type:** Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Envelope, Bond, and Custom 1 (up to 8)

## SSD (HD-6)



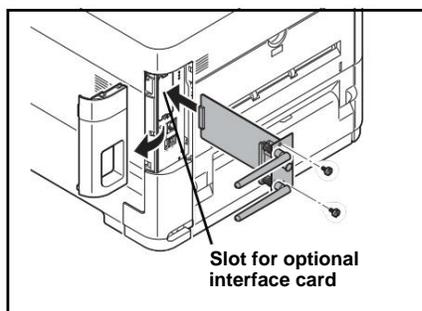
With an SSD installed in the printer, received data can be converted to bitmap (bitmap) and saved to this SSD. Multiple copies can be printed at high speed using the electric sort function. You can also use Document Box functions. For more information, refer to Document Box on page 5-1.

## Network Interface Kit (IB-50)



The Network Interface Kit is a high-speed interface for communication speeds of 1 gigabit per second. In addition to the TCP/IP and NetBEUI protocols supported by the machine's standard network interface, the IPX/SPX and AppleTalk protocols are also supported to enable printing in various environments, including Windows, Macintosh, UNIX and netware.

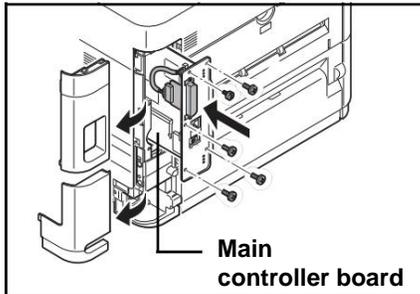
## Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51)



This is a wireless network interface kit compatible with IEEE802.11n (Max 300Mbps) and 11g/b wireless network specifications.

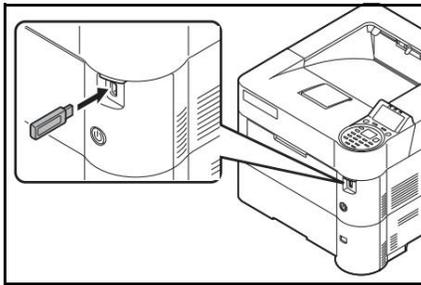
With the utilities provided, settings are possible for many operating systems and network protocols.

### Parallel Interface Kit (IB-32)



The parallel interface kit is compatible with communication speeds up to 2 Mbps. Use a parallel printer cable when using this option.

### USB memory



A USB memory is a type of portable simple flash memory that plugs into the USB memory slot. Files stored in USB memory can be printed by plugging the USB memory into the printer and specifying the desired file names from the control panel.

The control panel displays the names of PDF, TIFF, JPEG, and XPS files.

It is possible to print up to 1000 files from the USB memory. Files to be printed can have names of up to 255 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Double-byte characters included in a file name appear as corrupted text in the message list. Also, when the file is printed, an error message appears and the print fails.

For information on printing PDF files stored in USB memory, refer to USB Memory (USB Memory Selection) on page 4-17.

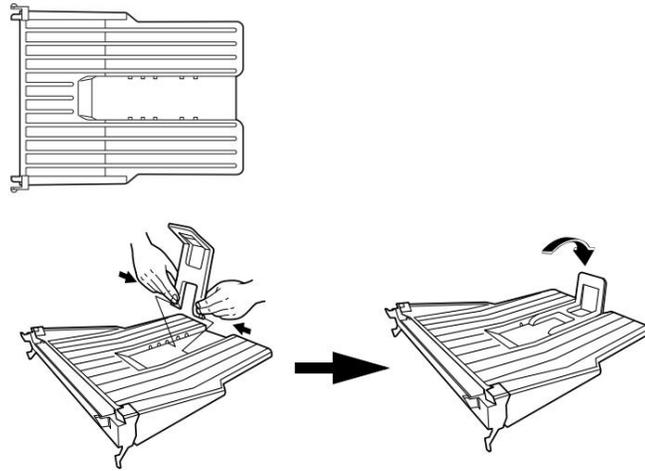
For more information on supported USB memory devices, contact your service representative.

### PT-320 Face-up output tray (for FS-4100DN/FS-4200DN/FS-4300DN)

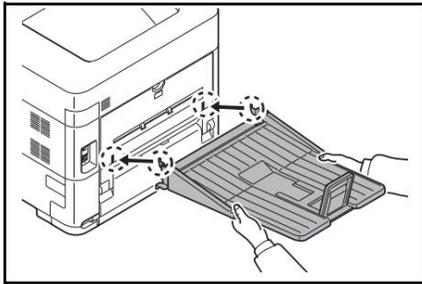
The face-up output tray is used to deliver prints face up (reverse order).

To install this output tray, follow these steps:

- 1 Install the paper stopper according to the size of paper to be used.



- 2 Install the face-up output tray at the back of the printer.



## Other Options

### PF-315+ Bulk Charger

Holds approximately 2000 sheets of 76-216mm × 148-305mm. This bulk paper feeder can be attached to the front of the printer after the multi-purpose tray is removed.

### Data Security Kit (E)

The security kit overwrites data that is no longer needed to make it difficult to restore it. Similarly, when data is stored on the SSD, it encrypts the data before writing it. It is impossible to decode (read) other than on normal printouts and operations, so security is enhanced if necessary.

### Card Authentication Kit (B)

It is possible to perform user authentication with an ID card. To perform authentication with an ID card, it is necessary to register the card information in the registered user list in advance. For the registration method, refer to the Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide.

### Clavier USB

A USB keyboard can be used to enter information into the control panel text fields. A special bracket is also available to install the keyboard on the printer. Contact the dealer or service representative for information on compatible keyboards for the printer before purchase.

## Paper

### General recommendations

This machine is designed to print on plain copier paper (generally used on standard dry ink copiers), but also accepts various other types of paper within the limits specified below.



Note The manufacturer cannot be held responsible for problems resulting from the use of paper that does not meet these specifications.

It is important to select the right paper. Using the wrong paper can cause paper jams, wrinkles, poor print quality, and paper waste, and can, in extreme cases, damage the machine.

The recommendations provided below help increase productivity by ensuring efficient printing and reducing wear and tear on the machine.

### Paper availability

Most paper types are compatible with a large number of machines. Paper designed for xerographic copiers can also be used with this machine.

There are three general grades of paper: economy, standard, and high quality. These papers are mainly distinguished by their ease of circulation in the machine. This characteristic is closely related to smoothness, format and moisture content paper and how it was cut. With higher quality paper, the risk of paper jams and other problems is reduced and the print quality is higher.

Differences between papers from different suppliers can also affect machine performance. A quality printer cannot produce quality results if the wrong paper is used. Inexpensive paper can be uneconomical in the long run if it causes printing problems.

The recommended weight is:

- Tray: 60 to 120 gsm
- MP tray: 60 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>
- PF-320 : 60 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup>
- PF-315+ : 60 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>

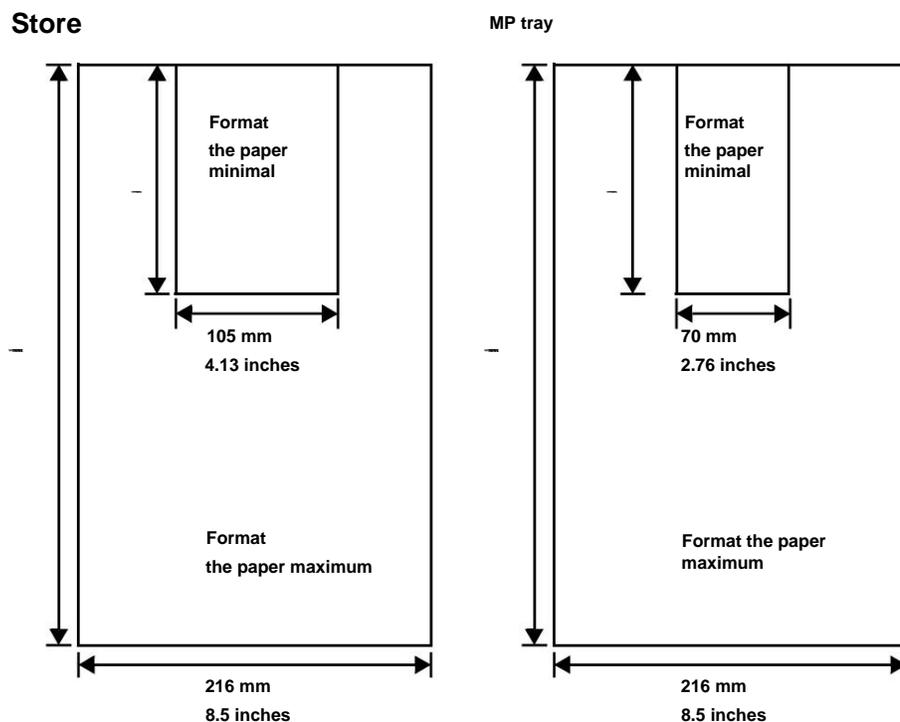
### Paper specifications

The following table shows the basic paper specifications. They are detailed on the following pages.

Element	Specification
Weight	Tray, PF-320: 60 to 120 gsm (16 to 32 lb/ream) MP tray, PF-315+: 60 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 59 lb/ream)
Thickness	0.086 to 0.110 mm (3.4 to 4.3 mils)
Dimensions	Refer to Paper Sizes on page A-15
Precision	±0.7 mm (±0.0276 inch)
Angles	90° ±0,2°
Degree of humidity	4% to 6%
grain direction	Grain long
Dough content	80 % minimum

## Minimum and maximum paper sizes

The minimum and maximum paper sizes are shown below. For non-standard paper (eg transparencies, labels, vellum, card stock, envelopes and thick) the MP tray should be used. For more information on setting paper sizes, see Config. bypass (MP tray settings) on page 4-26.



**Note** On FS-2100D and FS-2100DN, the minimum tray size is 140 × 210 mm (5.5 × 8.25 inches).

On the optional paper feeder (PF-320), the minimum size is 92 × 162 mm (3.62 × 6.38 inches) and the maximum size is 216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14 inches).

## Recommended paper

The following products are recommended for use with the printer for optimum performance.

Format	Product	Weight
Letter, Legal	International Paper Hammermill Tidal MP	75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb)
A4	Nautilus ReFresh TRIOTEC	80 g/m <sup>2</sup>

## Selecting the Appropriate Paper

This section provides guidelines for selecting paper.

### Condition

Avoid using paper that is curled, dirty, torn, bumpy, or has folded edges, or that is contaminated with lint, clay, or small pieces of paper.

Using this type of paper may cause illegible printing and paper jams, and may shorten the life of the machine. In particular, it is not recommended to use coated paper or paper with any other surface treatment.

The surface of the paper should be as smooth and even as possible.

### Composition

You should not use coated paper or paper whose surface has been treated and contains plastic or carbon. Exposed to the high temperatures associated with the fixing process, this paper can emit toxic fumes.

A standard quality paper should contain at least 80% pulp. The cotton or other fiber content must not exceed 20%.

### Paper sizes

The cassettes and MP tray can hold the paper sizes listed in the table below. For details, as well as paper sizes for the paper feeder (optional paper feeder PF-320), see Tray Size (1 to 5) (Setting the paper size of the tray) on page 4-28.

Accepted tolerances are  $\pm 0.7$  mm ( $\pm 0.0276$  inches) for length and width. The angles must be  $90^\circ \pm 0.2^\circ$ .

Yes: Can be stored No: Cannot be stored

Format of paper	Format	Store (FS-2100D/ FS-2100DN)	Store (FS-4100DN/ FS-4200DN/ FS-4300DN)	Store (PF-320)	Loader in lot (PF-315+)	MP tray
Envelope Monarch	3.88 x 7.5 inches	Non	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes
Envelope #10	4.13 x 9.5 inches	Non	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
C5 Envelope	162 x 229 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Executive	7.25 x 10.5 inches Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Letter	8.5x11 inches	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Legal	8.5x14 inches	Yes	Yes	Yes	Non	Yes
A4	210 x 297 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
B5 (EXP)	182 x 257 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
A5	148 x 210 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
A6	105 x 148 mm	Non	Yes	Non	Yes†	Yes
B6	128 x 182 mm	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Envelope #9	3.88 x 8.88 inches No		Non	Yes	Yes	Yes
#6-3/4 envelope	3.63 x 6.5 inches	Non	Non	Yes	Yes†	Yes
ISO B5	176 x 250 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Hagaki	100 x 148 mm	Non	Non	Non	Yes†	Yes
Oufuku Hagaki	148 x 200 mm	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Format of paper	Format	Store (FS-2100D/ FS-2100DN)	Store (FS-4100DN/ FS-4200DN/ FS-4300DN)	Store (PF-320)	Loader in lot (PF-315+)	MP tray
Office II	8.5 x 13 inches	Yes	Yes	Yes	Non	Yes
216 x 340 mm	216 x 340 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Non	Yes
16 kai	197 x 273 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Statement	5.5 x 8.5 inches	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Folio	210 x 330 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Non	Yes
Youkei 4	105 x 235 mm	Non	Non	Yes	Yes	Yes
Youkei 2	114 x 162 mm	Non	Non	Yes	Yes†	Yes
Lost		Magazine (FS-2100D / FS-2100DN): 140–216 mm x 210–356 mm (5.5–8.5 in x 8.25–14.02 in) Magasin (FS-4100DN/FS-4200DN/FS-4300DN) : 105–216 mm x 148–356 mm (4.13–8.5 in x 5.83–14.02 in) Magazine (PF-320): 92–216 mm x 162–356 mm (3.62–8.5 in x 6.38–14.02 in) MP Tray: 70–216 mm x 148–356 mm (2.76–8.5 in x 5.83–14.02 in) Mass Loader (PF-315+): 76–216 mm x 148–305 mm (2.99–8.5 in x 5.83–12.01 in)				

† Paper size can be specified using the printer driver. However, the paper loading depends on the type of paper.

### Smooth

The paper should have a smooth, uncoated surface. If its surface is rough or sandy, white areas may appear on the printout. Paper that is too smooth, on the other hand, can cause feeding problems and fogging (ie, a gray background effect).

### Weight

The grammage is the weight of the paper expressed in grams per square meter (g/m<sup>2</sup>). Too heavy or too light a paper weight can cause misfeeds or paper jams as well as premature wear of the machine. Uneven paper weight, or uneven paper thickness, can cause multiple sheets to feed or print quality problems (blurred print) due to poor toner fusing.

The recommended paper weight is 60 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 32 lb/ream) for the tray and 60 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 59 lb/ream) for the MP tray.

### Table of equivalent paper weights

Paper weight is expressed in pounds (lb) and grams per square meter (gsm). Shaded boxes indicate standard weights.

Paper weight (imperial system - lb)	Paper weight (metric system - g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Paper weight (imperial system - lb)	Paper weight (metric system - g/m <sup>2</sup> )
16	60	32	120
17	64	34	128
20	75	36	135
21	80	39	148

Paper weight (imperial system - lb)	Paper weight (metric system - g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Paper weight (imperial system - lb)	Paper weight (metric system - g/m <sup>2</sup> )
22	81	42	157
24	90	43	163
27	100	47	176
28	105	53	199

## Thickness

The paper used in the device should not be too thick or too thin. Problems with paper jams, multiple feeds, and faint print can mean that the paper is too thin. Problems with paper jams and blurred printing may indicate too thick paper. The thickness should be between 0.086 and 0.110 mm (3.4 to 4.3 mils).

## Degree of humidity

The degree of moisture is determined by the moisture content relative to the dry mass of the paper. Moisture can affect paper appearance, feedability, curl, electrostatic properties, and toner fixation.

The humidity of the paper varies according to the relative humidity of the room. If the relative humidity is high and it is absorbed by the paper, the edges of the paper expand and curl. If the relative humidity is low and the paper loses moisture, the edges of the paper will shrink and contract, which can affect print contrast.

Curled or brittle edges can cause paper jams and misalignment. The moisture content of the paper should be between 4 and 6%.

To maintain the correct humidity level, it is important to store paper in a controlled environment. Here are some recommendations for humidity control:

- Store paper in a cool, dry place.
- Keep paper in its wrapper for as long as possible. Put the paper back in its packaging if it is not used.
- Store paper in its original box. Place the cardboard in height, separated from the ground by a pallet for example.
- Once the paper has been moved from its storage location, leave it in the same room as the machine for 48 hours before using it.
- Avoid leaving the paper in a hot, sunny, or humid place.



**Note** When using coated paper, be aware that the sheets will stick together in high humidity.

## Paper grain

When paper is manufactured, it is cut into sheets with the grain parallel to the length (long grain) or width (short grain). Short grain papers can cause feed problems in the machine. It is recommended to use long grain paper in the machine.

## Other properties

**Porosity:** Indicates the density of the paper fiber.

**Stiffness:** Soft paper can curl in the machine and cause paper jams.

**Curl:** Most papers have a natural tendency to curl in one direction if left unwrapped.

**Electrostatic discharge:** During the printing process, the paper is electrostatically charged to attract toner. It must be able to get rid of this load so that the printed sheets do not stick together in the output tray.

**Whiteness:** The contrast of the printed page depends on the whiteness of the paper. Whiter paper results in a cleaner, shinier look.

**Quality Control:** Uneven sheet size, uneven corners, jagged edges, poorly cut sheets, and crushed edges and corners can cause the device to malfunction. A serious paper supplier should take all possible measures to avoid these problems.

**Packaging:** the paper should be packed in a sturdy cardboard box to protect it from damage during transport. Quality paper from a reputable supplier is usually packaged correctly.



**Note** You may notice that the printer emits steam in the area around the top platen if you use damp paper. However, you can safely print.

## Special paper

The following types of special paper can be used:

Type of paper to use	Paper type to select
Overhead projector transparencies	Transparent
rough paper	Rough
Thin paper (60 to 64 gsm)	Vellum
Labels	Labels
Recycled paper	recycled
Pre-printed paper	Pre-printed
Bound paper	hardcover
Postcards	Map
color paper	Color
Perforated paper	Perforated
On your mind	On your mind
Envelopes	Envelope
Thick paper (120 to 220 gsm)	Thick
High quality paper	High quality
Personal	Custom 1~8

Use paper designed for copiers or printers (with heat fixing). When using transparencies, labels, thin paper, postcards, or thick paper, load the media in the MP tray. For more information, refer to Tray (1 to 5) Type (Setting the tray paper type) on page 4-32. Because the composition and quality of special papers vary widely, special paper is more likely to cause printing problems than standard white paper. No liability will be incurred if moisture, for example, released when printing on special paper damages the machine or injures the operator.



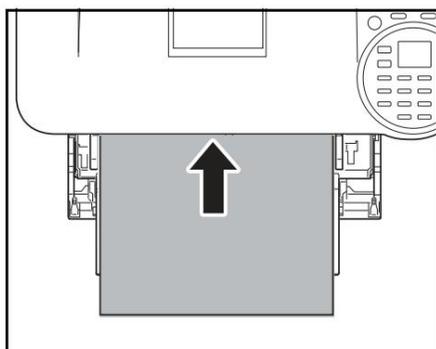
**Note** Before purchasing special paper, it is recommended that you test a sample on the machine and check if the print quality is satisfactory.

## Transparent

Transparencies must be resistant to the heat emitted by the fixing during the printing process. It is recommended to use 3M type CG3700 transparencies (Letter, A4).

The table below presents the specifications to be respected for the transparency:

Element	Specification
Heat tolerance	Must tolerate at least 190°C (374°F)
Thickness	0.100 to 0.110 mm (3.9 to 4.3 mils)
Material	Polyester
Precision	±0.7 mm (±0.0276 inch)
Angles	90° ±0.2°



To avoid printing problems, load transparencies into the printer one at a time using the MP tray. Always load transparencies vertically (with the long edge toward the printer).

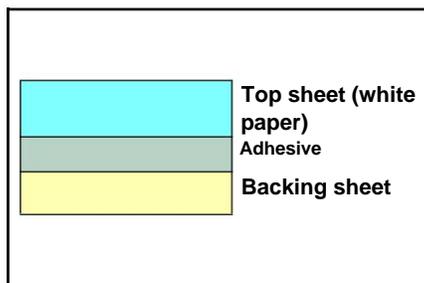
If transparencies have rough edges on the back, this may cause a paper jam. Remove rough edges, reverse sides, load sheet from opposite edge, or flip sheet.

If you need to remove transparencies from the tray (for example, to clear a paper jam), grasp them gently by the edges to avoid leaving fingerprints on them.

## Labels

Labels must be loaded in the MP tray.

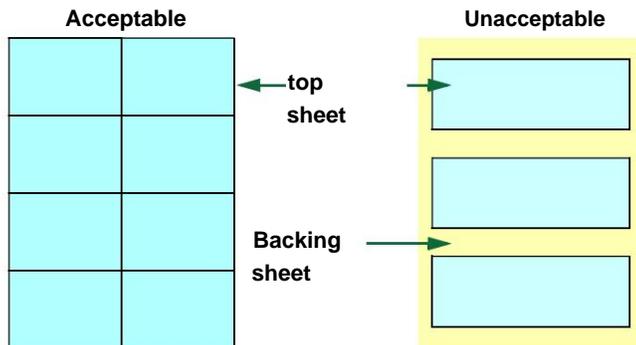
When printing on adhesive labels, the basic principle is that the adhesive part should never touch any component of the machine. If the adhesive film sticks to the drum or the rollers, the machine will be damaged.



Label sheets consist of three layers, shown in the figure to the right. Printing is done on the top sheet. The adhesive layer consists of pressure-sensitive adhesives. The backing sheet (also called the liner) protects the labels until they are used. Due to the complexity of its composition, adhesive label paper is particularly prone to printing problems.

The label sheet must be fully covered with its top sheet, with no gaps between the labels. Otherwise, the labels may peel off, causing serious jamming problems.

On some label sheets, the top paper protrudes an extra margin. Do not remove the extra sheet until printing is complete.

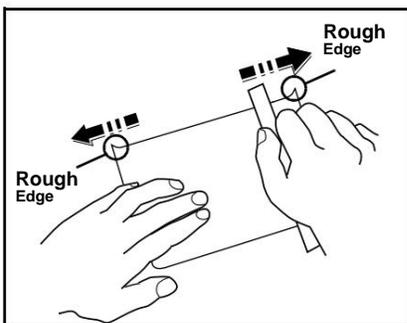


The table below presents the specifications to be respected for the labels.

Element	Specification
Top sheet weight	44 to 74 gsm (12 to 20 lbs/ream)
Composite weight	104 to 151 gsm (28 to 40 lbs/ream)
Top sheet thickness	0.086 to 0.107 mm (3.9 to 4.2 mils)
Composite thickness	0.115 to 0.145 mm (4.5 to 5.7 mils)
Degree of humidity	4 to 6% (composite)

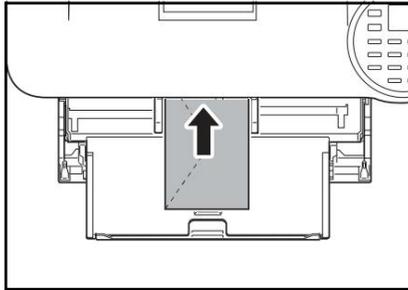
## Postcards

Fan the stack of cards and align the edges before placing them in the MP tray. Make sure they are not curled to avoid paper jams.



Some postcards have jagged edges on the back (caused by cutting). If so, place the cards on a flat surface and flatten the edges with, for example, a ruler.

## Envelopes



Envelopes should be loaded from the MP tray print side up or from the optional paper feeder (PF-320) print side down.

**IMPORTANT** Do not load paper above the limits on the paper width guide of the optional paper feeder.

For FS-2100D and FS-2100DN, configure envelope mode. Refer to **Switching to Envelope Mode (FS-2100D/FS 2100DN)** on page 2-29.

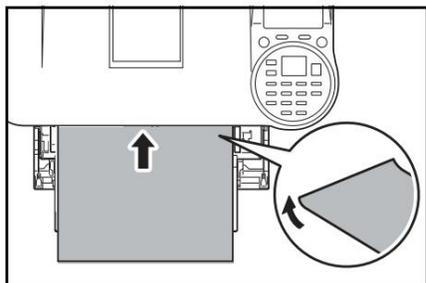
Since the composition of an envelope is more complex than that of ordinary paper, it is not always possible to ensure uniform printing over the entire surface of the envelope.

Generally, on casings, the direction of the grain is diagonal. Refer to **Paper Grain** on page A-17. However, this direction can easily be the cause of creases or embossing when the envelopes pass through the printer. Before buying envelopes in large quantities, it is recommended to test a sample on the machine and verify that the printer supports this type of envelope.

- Do not use envelopes containing liquid adhesive.
- Avoid long print runs for envelopes only. Indeed, the intensive printing of envelopes can cause premature wear of the printer.
- If a jam occurs, remove some envelopes from the MP tray.
- To avoid jams associated with curled envelopes, it is recommended not to leave more than 5 printed envelopes in the upper tray.

## Thick paper

Fan the stack of paper and align the edges before placing them in the MP tray. Some papers have jagged edges on the back (caused by cutting). If so, place the paper on a flat surface and smooth the edges once or twice with, for example, a ruler. Using paper with rough edges can cause paper jams.



**Note** If jams occur after the paper has been smoothed in this way, place the paper in the MP tray with the leading edge raised a few millimeters as shown.

## color paper

Colored paper should meet the same specifications as premium white paper, see Paper Specifications on page A-13. In addition, the pigments used in the paper must withstand the high fixing temperatures during printing (up to 200°C or 392°F).

## Preprinted paper

Preprinted paper should meet the same specifications as bond white paper, see Paper Specifications on page A-13. The pre-printed ink must withstand the high temperatures of the fixture during the printing process and must be compatible with silicone oil. Do not use paper with a treated surface, such as the type of paper commonly used for calendars.

## Recycled paper

Select recycled paper that meets the same specifications as white bond paper except for whiteness, see Paper Specifications on page A-13.



**Note** Before buying recycled paper, it is recommended to test a sample on the machine and check if the print quality is satisfactory.

## Paper Type

The printer can print at the best setting for the type of paper being used.

When you associate a paper type with a paper source from the printer control panel, the printer automatically selects the appropriate paper source and prints in the mode best suited to the corresponding paper type.

A different paper type setting can be made for each paper source, including the MP tray.

Besides the predefined paper types, you can also define and select custom paper types. Refer to Media Type Setup (setting the paper type) on page 4-35. The following types of paper can be used.

Yes: Can be stored No: Cannot be stored

Paper Type	Feed				
	MP tray / Optional bulk feeder PF-315+	Store	Optional Paper Feeder PF-320	Paper weight	Front Path back
Normal	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes
Transparent	Yes	Nope	Nope	Very thick	Nope
Pre-printed	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes
Labels	Yes	Nope	Nope	Thick 1	Nope
hardcover	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 3	Yes
recycled	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes
Vellum	Yes	Nope	Nope	End	Nope
Rough	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 3	Yes
On your mind	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 3	Yes
Color	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 3	Yes
Perforated	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes
Envelope	Yes	Nope	Yes	Thick 3	Nope
Map	Yes	Nope	Nope	Thick 3	Nope
Thick	Yes	Nope	Nope	Thick 3	Nope
High quality	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes
Custom 1 (to 8)†	Yes	Yes	Yes	Standard 2	Yes

† Paper type defined and registered by the user. Up to 8 types of user parameters can be defined. For details, refer to Media Type Setup (setting the paper type) on page 4-35.

## Specifications



Note The specifications below are subject to change without notice.

## Machine

Element		Description				
		FS-2100D	FS-2100DN	FS-4100DN	FS-4200DN	FS-4300DN
Kind		Desk				
Printing method		Semiconductor electrophotography, single drum system				
Paper weight	Store	60 to 120 gsm				
	MP tray	60 to 220 gsm , 230 gsm (card)				
Types of paper	Store	Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Hole Punched, Bond, and Custom 1 (up to 8)				
	MP tray	Plain, Transparency, Preprinted, Labels, Bond, Recycled, Vellum, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Envelope, Card Stock, Thick, High Quality, and Custom 1 (up to 8).				
Paper sizes	Store	C5 Envelope, Executive, 8 1/2 x 11"(Letter), 8 1/2 x 14" (Legal), A4, B5, A5, ISO B5, Oficio II, 216 x 340mm, 16K, Statement, Folio and Custom	DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Executive, 8 1/2 x 11"(Letter), 8 1/2 x 14"(Legal), A4, B5, A5, A6, B6, ISO B5, Oufuku Hagaki, Oficio II, 216 x 340 mm, 16K, Statement, Folio and Custom			
	MP tray	Monarch Envelope, #10 Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Executive, 8 1/2 x 11"(Letter), 8 1/2 x 14"(Legal), A4, B5, A5, A6, B6, #9 Envelope , Envelope #6, ISO B5, Hagaki, Oufuku Hagaki, Oficio II, 216 x 340 mm, 16K, Statement, Folio, Youkei 2, Youkei 4 and Personal				
Enlargement rate		25 to 400%, 1% increments				
Speeds printing	Front	A4: 40ppm B5: 33ppm A5: 22ppm A6: 22ppm Letter: 42ppm Legal: 33ppm	A4: 45ppm B5: 36ppm A5: 23ppm A6: 23ppm Letter: 47ppm Legal: 38ppm	A4: 50ppm B5: 40ppm A5: 27ppm A6: 27ppm Letter: 52ppm Legal: 42ppm	A4: 60ppm B5: 48ppm A5: 32ppm A6: 32ppm Letter: 62ppm Legal: 50ppm	
	Both sides	A4: 20ppm B5: 16.5ppm A5: 11ppm Letter: 21ppm Legal: 16.5ppm	A4: 32ppm B5: 25ppm A5: 16ppm Letter: 33ppm Legal: 16ppm	A4: 36ppm B5: 28ppm A5: 19ppm Letter: 37ppm Legal: 21ppm	A4: 43ppm B5: 34ppm A5: 23ppm Letter: 44ppm Legal: 25ppm	
First Print Time (A4, Tray Feed)		9 seconds max				

Element		Description			
		FS-2100D	FS-2100DN FS-4100DN FS-4200DN	FS-4300DN	
Warm-up time (22°C, 60% HR)	Power on	15 seconds max		20 seconds max	25 seconds max
	Standby†	15 seconds max		20 seconds max	25 seconds max
Paper capacity	Store	500 sheets (80gsm )			
	MP tray	100 sheets (80gsm )			
Output tray capacity	Upper tray	250 sheets (67 gsm )		500 sheets (67 gsm )	
	Face up tray	-		100 sheets (67 gsm )	
Continuous printing		1 to 999 sheets			
Resolution		1200 Fine Mode, 1200 Fast Mode, 600 dpi, 300 dpi			
Environment of use	Temperature	10 to 32.5°C (50 to 90.5°F)			
	Relative humidity	15 to 80%			
	Altitude	2,500 m (8,202 ft) maximum			
	Lighting	1500 lux max			
Controller		PowerPC465 PowerPC465, ARM9			
Operating systems		Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/R2, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008/R2, Windows 7, Apple Macintosh OS 10.4 or higher			
Interface	Standard	Interface connector USB: 1 USB Host: 2 eKUIO-W slot: 1	USB interface connector: 1 USB Host: 2 Network interface: 1 (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) eKUIO-W slot: 1		
	Option	HD-6, IB-50, IB-51, IB-32			
PDL		PRESCRIBE			
Emulation		PCL6, IBM Proprinter, EPSON LQ-850, Line Printer, KPDL, KPDL(Auto)			
Memory	Standard	128 MB	256 MB		
	Maximum	1152 MB	1280 MB		
Dimensions (WxDxH)		380x416x285mm 15 x 16 3/8 x 11-1/4"		380x416x320mm 15 x 16 3/8 x 12 5/8"	
Weight		Approx. 13.5 kg (29.7 lbs)		Approx. 14.6 kg (32.12 lbs)	
Power Requirements		120V, 60Hz, 8.3A 220-240V, 50Hz/60Hz, 4.4A		120V, 60Hz, 9.7A 220-240V, 50Hz/60Hz, 5.2A	

Element		Description				
		FS-2100D	FS-2100DN FS-4100DN	FS-4200DN	FS-4300DN	
Power consumption (Standard)	Maximum	925 W (states USA/Canada) 986 W (European countries)	928 W (states USA/Canada) 995 W (European countries)	1148W (US/Canada) 1218 W (European countries)	1153W (US/Canada) 1222 W (European countries)	1164W (US/Canada) 1238 W (European countries)
	During printing	632 W (states USA/Canada) 564 W (European countries)	593 W (states USA/Canada) 584 W (European countries)	644 W (states USA/Canada) 618 W (European countries)	690 W (states USA/Canada) 677 W (European countries)	783 W (states USA/Canada) 757 W (European countries)
	Standby	10.6 W (states USA/Canada) 11.5W (European countries)	11.7 W (states USA/Canada) 12.2W (European countries)	12.7 W (states USA/Canada) 13.3W (European countries)	12.5 W (states USA/Canada) 12.8W (European countries)	12.5 W (states USA/Canada) 13.1W (European countries)
	Standby†	2.6 W (states USA/Canada) 3.0 W (European countries)	1.7 W (states USA/Canada) 1.9W (European countries)	1.8 W (states USA/Canada) 1.6W (European countries)	1.8 W (states USA/Canada) 1.6W (European countries)	1.8 W (states USA/Canada) 1.6W (European countries)
	Shutdown	0.5W max				
Consumption electric (with options)	Maximum	945 W (states USA/Canada) 1015 W (European countries)	957 W (states USA/Canada) 1021 W (European countries)	1180W (United States/Canada) 1256 W (European countries)	1185W (United States/Canada) 1256 W (European countries)	1204W (United States/Canada) 1275 W (European countries)
	During printing	683 W (states USA/Canada) 645 W (European countries)	632 W (states USA/Canada) 627 W (European countries)	696 W (states USA/Canada) 679 W (European countries)	761 W (states USA/Canada) 715 W (European countries)	866 W (states USA/Canada) 811 W (European countries)
	Standby	17.0 W (States USA/Canada) 15.7W (European countries)	19.2 W (states USA/Canada) 19.9W (European countries)	19.4 W (states USA/Canada) 20.0 W (European countries)	19.1 W (states USA/Canada) 19.6W (European countries)	18.8 W (states USA/Canada) 19.6W (European countries)
	Standby†	5.2 W (states USA/Canada) 5.9W (European countries)	4.7 W (states USA/Canada) 5.1W (European countries)	4.9 W (states USA/Canada) 4.7W (European countries)	5.1 W (states USA/Canada) 4.6W (European countries)	4.8 W (states USA/Canada) 4.8W (European countries)
	Shutdown	0.5W max				
Option	Memory expansion, paper feeder (500 sheets x 4), SSD (HD-6), SD Card, Network Interface Kit (IB-50), Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51), parallel interface kit (IB-32), bulk loader (PF-315+)		Expansion memory, paper feeder (500 sheets x 4), SSD (HD-6), SD card, network interface kit (IB-50), wireless network interface kit (IB-51), parallel interface (IB-32), bulk feeder (PF-315+), face-up output tray (PT-320)			

† Value is on Energy Saver mode (default).

## Paper feeder (PF-320) (optional)

Element	Description
Maximum number of stores	4
Paper format	Monarch Envelope, #10 Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Executive, 8 1/2 x 11"(Letter), 8 1/2 x 14"(Legal), A4, B5, A5, B6, #9 Envelope, Envelope #6, ISO B5, Oufuku Hagaki, Oficio II, 216x340mm, 16K, Statement, Folio, Youkei 2, Youkei 4 and Custom
Paper Type	Plain, Preprinted, Hardcover, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Hole Punched, Envelope, High Quality and Custom 1 (up to 8)
Paper capacity	500 sheets (80gsm )
Dimensions (WxDxH)	380x410x121mm 15 x 16 1/8 x 4 3/4"
Weight	4.0 kg max (8.8 lbs max)

## Mass feeder (PF-315+) (optional)

Element	Description	
Paper format	Monarch Envelope, #10 Envelope, DL Envelope, C5 Envelope, Executive, Letter, A4, B5, A5, A6, B6, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, ISO B5, Custom, Hagaki, Oufuku Hagaki, 16K, Statement, Youkei 2 and Youkei 4	
Paper type	Plain, Transparency, Preprinted, Labels, Hardcover, Recycled, Vellum, Rough, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Envelope, Card Stock, Thick, High Quality and Custom 1 (up to 8)	
Paper capacity	2000 sheets (80gsm )	
Noise (Lwad)	FS-2100D/FS-2100DN: 70dB(A) FS-4100DN: 71dB(A) FS-4200DN: 72dB(A) FS-4300DN: 74dB(A) (for loading standard size paper)	
Dimensions (WxDxH)	PF-315+	352x345x376mm 13 7/8 x 13 5/8 x 14 7/8"
	PB-325	380x705.6x183.7mm 15 x 27 3/4 x 7 3/4"
Weight	PF-315+	7.7 kg max (16.94 lbs max)
	PB-325	6.5 kg max (14.3 lbs max)

## SSD (HD-6) (optional)

Element	Description
Ability	32 GB
Feed	From machine

## Network Interface Kit (IB-50) (optional)

Element	Description	
Processor	SoC 88F6180	
RAM	64 MB	
Flash ROMs	16 MB	
Connectors	10BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 1000BASE-T	
Printer interface	eKUIO (5.0V)	
Operating system	Windows 2000(32bit) / XP(32bit/64bit) / Vista(32bit/64bit) / 7(32bit/64bit) / Server 2003(32bit/64bit) / Server 2008(32bit/64bit) NetWare 3.x. / 4.x. / 5.x. / 6.x MacOS 9.x / Mac OS X(PowerPC:Ver 10.3.x-Ver 10.5.5 / Intel:Ver 10.4.4-Ver 10.6.x) UNIX	
Network protocols	IPv6	Support Apple Bonjour, DHCPv6, DNSv6, FTP, FTPS, HTTP, HTTPS, ICMPv6, IKEv1, IPP, IPPS, Kerberos, LDAP, LPD, POP3, RawPort, SLP, SMTP, SNMP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, SNTP, ThinPrint
	IPv4	Compatible with Apple Bonjour, BOOTP, DHCP, DNS, FTP, FTPS, HTTP, HTTPS, ICMP, IPP, IPPS, KCP, Kerberos, LDAP, LPD, NetBIOS over TCP/IP, POP3, POP3 over SSL, RawPort, SLP, SMTP, SNMP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, SNTP, ThinPrint, WINS
	Other	AppleTalk, IPX/SPX, LLTD, NetBEUI, NetWare (NDS/Bindery)
Security protocols	EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, EAP-FAST, IKE, PEAP, SNMPv3, SSL/TLS (HTTPS)	
Terms of use	0 to 70°C, 20 to 80% RH, non-condensing	
Storage conditions	-20 to 50°C, 20 to 90% RH, non-condensing	
EMI compliance	FCC Class B (USA), CE (EU), VCCI Class B (Japan)	

## Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) (optional)

Element		Description		
Processor		SoC 88F6180		
RAM		64 MB		
ROMs		16 MB		
Wireless network interface	IEEE802.11b	Frequency	2.4GHz	
		transmission system	DS-SS	
		Speed of transmission	1 / 2 / 5.5 / 11 (Mbps)	
		Channel	1-11ch	
	IEEE802.11g	Frequency	2.4GHz	
		transmission system	OFDM	
		Baud rate	6 / 9 / 12 / 18 / 24 / 36 / 48 / 54 (Mbps)	
		Channel	1-11ch	
	IEEE802.11n	Frequency	2.4GHz	
		transmission system	OFDM	
		Baud rate	Max. 300Mbps	
		Channel	1-11ch	
	Authentication method		Open System / Shared Key / WPA / WPA2	
	Encryption mode		None / WEP(64bit / 128bit) / TKIP / AES In IEEE 802.11n operation, only AES is supported	
Antenna		2 unidirectional antennas		
Printer interface		eKUIO (5.0V)		
Operating system		Windows 2000(32bit) / XP(32bit/64bit) / Vista(32bit/64bit) / 7(32bit/64bit) / Server 2003(32bit/64bit) / Server 2008(32bit/64bit) NetWare 3.x. / 4.x. / 5.x. / 6.x MacOS 9.x / Mac OS X(PowerPC:Ver 10.3.x-Ver 10.5.5 / Intel:Ver 10.4.4-Ver 10.6.x) UNIX		

Element		Description
Network protocols	IPv6	Support Apple Bonjour, DHCPv6, DNSv6, FTP, FTPS, HTTP, HTTPS(IPPS), ICMPv6, IKEv1, IPP, IPSS, Kerberos, LDAP, LPD, POP3, RawPort, SLP, SMTP, SNMP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, SNTP, ThinPrint
	IPv4	Support Apple Bonjour, BOOTP, DHCP, DNS, FTP, FTPS, HTTP, HTTPS, ICMP, IPP, IPSS, KCP, Kerberos, LDAP, LPD, NetBIOS over TCP/IP, POP3, POP3 over SSL, RawPort, SLP, SMTP, SNMP, SNMPv1/v2c/v3, SNTP, ThinPrint, WINS
	Other	AppleTalk, IPX/SPX, LLTD, NetBEUI, NetWare (NDS/Bindery)
Security protocols		EAP-TLS, IKE, PEAP, SNMPv3, SSL/TLS (HTTPS)
Terms of use		0 to 60°C, 20 to 80% RH, non-condensing
Storage conditions		-20 to 50°C, 20 to 90% RH, non-condensing
EMI Compliance		FCC Class B (US), CE (EU), VCCI Class B (Japan)

## Parallel Interface Kit (IB-32) (optional)

Element		Description
Installation environment		Complies with the machine installation environment
Interface		1 parallel interface (IEEE-1284 compliant)
Feed		From machine

## Environmental specifications

Element		Description
Sleep timeout (default setting)		1 minute
Wake-up time	FS-2100D FS-2100DN FS-4100DN	15 seconds max
	FS-4200DN	20 seconds max
	FS-4300DN	25 seconds max
Both sides		Standard
Paper input capacity		Ability to use 100% recycled paper



Note For recommended paper types, consult your dealer or a technician.

## Glossary

---

### Internet Protocol (IP) address

An Internet Protocol address is a unique number corresponding to a specific computer or device belonging to the network. An IP address is made up of four groups of numbers separated by periods, for example: 192.168.110.171. Each digit must be between 0 and 255.

### AppleTalk

AppleTalk allows the sharing of files and printers and the use of application software placed on another computer on the same AppleTalk network.

### Auto-IP

Auto-IP is a module that allows dynamic IPv4 address assignment at device startup. However, the DHCP function requires a DHCP server. Auto-IP is a serverless method for choosing an IP address. IP addresses between 169.254.0.0 and 169.254.255.255 are reserved for automatic assignment by Auto-IP.

### MP tray (multipurpose)

Use this tray instead of trays when printing on envelopes, Hagaki paper, transparencies, or labels.

### Work box

The Job Box feature stores print data on the printer and allows users to print one or more copies of the stored data later using the printer's control panel.

### Personal box.

The Custom Box feature stores print data for each user and allows the user to print one or more copies of the stored data later using the printer's control panel.

### Hello

Bonjour (also known as zero-configuration networking) is a service that automatically discovers computers, devices, and services on an IP network. Since an industry-standard IP protocol is used, Bonjour allows devices to automatically recognize each other without specifying IP address or without setting a DNS server.

Bonjour also sends and receives network packets on UDP port 5353. If a firewall is enabled, the user must verify that UDP port 5353 is always open for Bonjour to work properly. Some firewalls are set to drop only certain Bonjour packets. If Bonjour is not working stably, check the firewall settings and make sure Bonjour is registered in the exception list and Bonjour packets are accepted.

If you install Bonjour on Windows XP Service Pack 2 or higher, the Windows Firewall will be set correctly for Bonjour.

### SD/SDHC memory card

An SD memory card is a removable storage medium. It is a non-volatile semiconductor memory on which data remains even after the power supply is interrupted. The maximum memory capacity can reach 2 GB.

SDHC memory cards represent a higher specification of SD memory cards. These memory cards have larger capacities than SD memory cards and have a guaranteed minimum data transfer rate.

Since the file system has been changed to FAT32, a maximum capacity of 32 GB is supported.

### Paper feed timeout

When data is sent to a printer, pauses may occur. The printer then waits for the next data without performing a form feed. The paper feed delay is a function that waits

only a predefined delay before executing an automatic page break. When the timeout started, after the designated timeout, the printer will automatically process the data being received and print it out. If the printer has received no data for the last page, it completes processing the job without outputting any paper.

### **DDSN (Dynamic Domain Name System)**

A dynamic domain name system (DDSN) is a system that provides a fixed host name to dynamically changing IP addresses.

By updating the correspondence between the registered host name and the IP address when the latter changes, it is possible to connect with the same host name even if the IP address has changed.

### **DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)**

A protocol that automatically resolves IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses on a TCP/IP network. DHCP reduces the management overhead of networks using a large number of client computers by releasing clients, including printers, from the assigned IP address.

### **EcoPrint**

Printing mode that reduces toner consumption. Pages printed in economy print mode are lighter than in normal mode.

### **Emulation**

Function to interpret and execute the page description languages of other printers.

### **PPI**

IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a standard that uses TCP/IP networks such as the Internet to allow print jobs to be sent between remote computers and printers. IPP is an extension of the HTTP protocol used to display websites and it allows router printing to remote printers. It also supports HTTP authentication mechanisms with SSL client and server authentication, as well as encryption.

### **KPDL**

Kyocera page description language compatible with Adobe PostScript Level 3.

### **Subnet mask**

The subnet mask is a way of increasing the network address section of an IP address. A subnet mask represents all network address sections as a 1 and all host address sections as a 0. The number of bits in the prefix indicates the length of the network address. The term prefix refers to something that is added to the beginning and in this context it indicates the first section of the IP address. When an IP address is written, the length of the network address can be indicated by the length of the prefix after a forward slash (/). For example, "24" in the address "133.210.2.0/24". In this way, "133.210.2.0/24" indicates the IP address "133.210.2.0" with a 24-bit prefix (network section). This new network address section (originally part of the host address), made possible by the subnet mask, is called the subnet address. When entering the subnet mask, ensure that the DHCP option is set to Disabled.

### **Additional memory**

Additional memory (optional) increases the memory capacity of the device. For information about DIMMs that can be used in this machine, contact your service technician.

### **Standby**

This mode saves energy. It is activated when the machine is not used for the predefined period of time. In this mode, power is reduced to a minimum. The default setting can be changed.

### **NetBEUI (NetBIOS Extended User Interface)**

Interface developed by IBM in 1985 as an update to NetBIOS. It offers more advanced functions on small networks than other protocols such as TCP/IP, etc. It is not suitable for large networks due to a lack of routing capabilities to select the most suitable paths. NetBEUI has been adopted by IBM for the OS/2 system and by Microsoft for Windows as the standard protocol for file and print sharing services.

### **NetWare**

Novell network management software running on a variety of operating systems.

### **Status page**

Lists the current machine settings: memory, total number of prints, paper source settings, etc. This page can be printed from the control panel. It is sometimes called the status page.

### **Default Gateway**

Indicates the device, computer or router, which serves as an entry/exit (gateway) for access to computers placed outside the network in use. If no gateway is specified for a destination IP address, data is sent to the host designated as the default gateway.

### **Printer driver**

Software for printing created data on application software. The printer driver for the machine is on the accompanying Product Library disc. Install the driver on the computer connected to the machine.

### **outline fonts**

With outline fonts, character outlines are represented by numeric expressions, and fonts can be scaled up or down in various ways by changing the numeric values of these expressions. Printing remains clear even if you enlarge fonts, with characters defined with outlines represented by numeric expressions. You can specify the size of fonts in 0.25 point increments up to 999.75 points.

### **POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3)**

Standard protocol for receiving e-mail from a server where mail is stored on the Internet or an intranet.

### **PostScript**

Page description language developed by Adobe Systems. It offers flexible font functionality along with high-quality graphics, ensuring superior quality printing. The first version, called Level 1, was released in 1985, followed by Level 2 enabling color printing and double-byte languages (e.g., Japanese) in 1990. Level 3 was released in 1996 as an upgrade. up-to-date for the Internet and the PDF format, with progressive improvements in the technologies of implementation.

### **PPM (impressions per minute)**

Corresponds to the number of A4 prints made in one minute.

### **dpi (dots per inch)**

Unit of resolution, representing the number of dots printed per inch (25.4 mm).

### **RA (Stateless)**

The IPv6 router communicates (transmits) information such as the global address prefix using ICMPv6. This information is the Router Advertisement (RA). ICMPv6 stands for Internet Control Message Protocol and it is an IPv6 standard defined in RFC 2463 "Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification".

**SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)**

Protocol ensuring the transmission of e-mail over the Internet or intranets. It allows the transfer of mail between mail servers and the sending of mail to servers by clients.

**SSD (Solid State Drive)**

An SSD is a medium for storing data using flash memory.

While hard drives generally use magnetic disks as a storage medium, SSDs are a storage medium that employs semiconductors.

Compared to hard drives where a head reads the magnetic disk, the advantage of SSDs is that they can read data at higher speeds, they are resistant to vibration and do not need motors, which which means they consume less electricity and make no noise.

**TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol)**

TCP/IP is a set of protocols intended to define how computers and devices communicate on a network.

**TCP/IP (IPv6)**

TCP/IP (IPv6) is based on the current Internet protocol, TCP/IP (IPv4). IPv6 is the next generation of the Internet protocol and it expands the available address space to solve the lack of addresses problem associated with IPv4. This new protocol also makes it possible to introduce other improvements such as additional security functionality and the ability to prioritize data transmission.

**USB (Universal Serial Bus)**

Interface standard for low to medium speed serial interfaces. This printer supports the Hi-Speed USB standard. The maximum transfer rate is 480 Mbit/s and the maximum cable length is 5 meters (16 feet).

# Index

## HAS

Inside the printer  
 clearing paper jams .....8-23 Extended  
 A4 .....4-53  
 Administrator .....4-120  
 Printer Driver Help .....3-7 XPS Adjustment on  
 page .....4-53  
 Appendix .....A-1  
 Canceling a Print Job .....3-3, 4-4 AppleTalk .....  
 .....Glossary-1 Auto-  
 IP .....Glossary-1

## B

Waste toner box .....1-2  
 Replacement .....7-6 Face-up  
 output tray .....A-11 MP tray  
  
 Loading Paper .....2-27 Paper  
 Size .....4-26 clearing paper  
 jams .....8-20 Paper Feeder Source .....  
 4-40 Media Type .....4-27 MP Tray  
 (Multi-Purpose) .....1-2 Document  
 Box .....5-2 Job Box  
 Settings .....5-35 Personal  
 box .....5-4 Custom Box Printer  
 Driver .....5-37 Job  
 Box .....5-24  
 Hello .....Glossary-1 Paper  
 Jams .....8-18  
 Location .....8-18  
 Message .....8-19 Paper  
 stopper .....1-2, 2-32

## VS

Rear cover .....1-4 Front  
 Cover .....1-3 Duplex Front  
 Cover .....1-3 Interface  
 Cover .....1-4 Power Cord Connector  
 Cover .....1-4 Fusing Unit Cover .....1-4  
 Left Cover .....1-2 Top  
 cover .....1-3 Card Authentication  
 Kit (B) .....A-12 SD/SDHC Memory  
 Card .....Glossary-1 .....4-86  
 Postcards .....A-20 Toner  
 Format .....  
 Cartridge .....1-3 Paper  
 Feeder .....A-9 Loading  
 Paper .....2-24 Paper  
 Size .....4-28

clearing paper jams .....8-21 Paper  
 Feeder Source .....4-40 .....  
 Type .....4-32 Paper  
 Bulk charger .....A-12  
 clearing paper jams .....8-24 USB Keyboard .  
 .....A-12 Command  
 Center RX .....2-17  
 Counter .....4-25 Network  
 Interface Connector .....1-4 Power Cord  
 Connector .....1-4  
 Copies .....4-51

## D

Data Security Kit .....A-12 DDSN .....  
 .....Glossary-2 Date  
 definition .....4-79 Print  
 Density .....4-51  
 Troubleshooting .....8-1 Print  
 Quality Problems .....8-4 Moving the  
 Printer .....7-10 Uninstalling  
 Software .....2-16  
 Developer .....1-3 DHCP .....  
 .....Glossary-2  
 DIMM .....A-5  
 RAM Disk .....4-84

## E

EcoPrint .....4-50  
 Screen .....1-5, 4-2  
 Status information .....4-2  
 Language .....4-77  
 Online Help Messages .....8-20  
 Document Box Default Screen .....4-78 Device  
 Parts .....1-3 Introduction .....  
 1-4 Emulation .....4-44 .....  
 4-44 .....4-45 Error Report .....  
 emulation .....Alternative  
 Labels .....A-19

## F

Optional functions .....4-136 Custom Paper  
 Size .....4-29 Paper Size .....4-31 .....  
 Weight .....4-36 Duplex  
 Printing .....4-37 TIFF/JPEG  
 Format .....4-54

## G

Error management .....4-88 Error  
 Handling

MP tray empty ..... 4-89  
 Paper error ..... Duplex Paper ..... 4-89  
 Error ..... 4-88

## I

Printing from applications ..... 3-2  
 Duplex Printing ..... 4-42  
 Allowed with custom paper ..... 4-38  
 Binding Modes ..... 4-42  
 Installing Software ..... 2-7  
 Installing the Macintosh Printer Driver .....  
 2-10  
 Windows ..... 2-7  
 1-4  
 USB interface .....  
 Power switch ..... 1-2  
 Prolonged non-use ..... 7-10

## J

Game characters ..... 4-49

## K

KIR ..... 4-50  
 Parallel Interface Kit ..... A-11  
 Network Interface Kit ..... A-10  
 Wireless Network Interface Kit ..... A-10  
 Kits ..... 7-2

## L

Language ..... 4-77  
 USB memory slot ..... 1-2  
 Screen Brightness ..... 4-87

## M

Paper  
 tray Loading paper ..... 2-24  
 Paper Size ..... 4-28  
 clearing paper jams ..... 8-21  
 Paper Feeder Source .....  
 4-32  
 Paper Type ..... 4-40  
 Store 1 ..... 1-2  
 Maintenance ..... 4-133, 7-1  
 Restart ..... Memory ..... 4-133  
 expansion ..... A-6  
 Installation .....  
 A-6  
 Withdrawal .....  
 A-7  
 Checking Memory Expansion ..... AT  
 USB memory ..... 8  
 A-11  
 Print ..... 4-17  
 Remove ..... 4-24  
 Mode Selection Menu ..... 4-9  
 Status Menu ..... 6-1  
 USB Keyboard ..... 6-5

Job status ..... 6-2  
 Work Log ..... 6-4  
 Wireless Network Online Help Messages for Clearing  
 Paper Jams ..... 8-20  
 Error Messages ..... 8-6  
 Character Entry Method ..... A-2  
 Paper Feed Mode ..... 4-41  
 Envelope Mode ..... 2-29  
 Memory Expansion Module .....  
 A-5 optional ..  
 Paper Size Dial ..... 4-28

NOT

NetBEUI ..... Glossary-2  
 Cleaning Printer ..... 7-8  
 Toner Alert Level .....  
 4-97  
 Job Name ..... 4-55  
 User Name ..... 4-54

## O

Option  
 Face-Up Output Tray ..... A-5  
 SD/SDHC Memory Card ..... A-5, A-9  
 Paper Feeder ..... A-5  
 Bulk Loader ..... A-5  
 Parallel Interface Kit ..... A-5  
 Wireless Network Interface Kit ..... A-5  
 USB Memory ..... A-5  
 memory expansion module ..... AT  
 SSDs ..... 5  
 A-5  
 Orientation ..... 4-52

## P

Status page ..... 4-12  
 Control Panel ..... 1-2, 1-5  
 Paper Other Properties ..... A-17  
 Postcards .....  
 A-20  
 Loading Paper in the Tray ..... 2-24  
 Loading envelopes ..... 2-29  
 Loading Paper in the MP Tray ..... 2-27  
 Paper Availability .....  
 A-21  
 Envelopes ..... A-13  
 Paper Thickness ..... 4-35  
 Labels ..... A-19  
 Minimum and Maximum Paper Sizes ..... A-14  
 Paper Sizes ..... 4-26, 4-28, A-15  
 Color Paper ..... A-22  
 Thick Paper ..... A-22  
 Pre-printed paper ..... A-22  
 Recycled paper ..... A-22  
 Special paper ..... A-18  
 Recommendations ..... A-15  
 Resets custom settings ..... 4-39  
 Clear ..... A-18  
 Media Type ..... 4-27, 4-32, 4-34, 4-35

- 
- Color paper..... A-22
  - Thick paper..... A-22
  - Pre-printed paper..... A-22
  - Recycled paper..... A-22
  - Param. ID card..... 4-123
  - Param. service..... 4-133
  - User login parameter..... 4-113
  - Timer setting
    - Automatic error correction..... 4-95
    - Automatic panel reset..... 4-91
  - Page parameter..... 4-51
  - Timer parameter
    - Paper feed timeout . . . . 4-97
    - Standby level..... 4-92
    - Stopping rule..... 4-94
    - Shutdown timer..... 4-95
    - Error correction timer..... 4-96
    - Panel Reset Timer . . . . 4-92
    - Sleep timer..... 4-94
  - Job Accounting Settings..... 4-125
  - Store settings (1 to 5)
    - Paper Size..... 4-28
    - weight..... 4-35
    - Paper Type..... 4-32
  - Optional network settings..... 4-64
    - AppleTalk..... 4-73
    - Communications..... 4-75
    - MAC address filtering..... 4-75
    - LAN interface..... 4-74
    - IPSec..... 4-74
    - NetWare..... 4-73
    - General Settings..... 4-72
    - TCP/IP Settings..... 4-72
    - Restarting the network..... 4-75
    - Wireless network..... 4-65
  - Timer settings..... 4-90
  - Network Settings..... 2-2, 4-56
    - IP address..... 4-58
    - Auto-IP..... 4-58
    - Hello..... 4-60
    - Protocol detail..... 4-62
    - DHCP..... 4-57
    - ..... 4-62
    - PPPoE (Server)..... 4-62
    - HTTP..... 4-62
    - LDAP..... 4-63
    - LPD..... 4-62
    - Subnet mask..... 4-59
    - NetBEUI..... 4-62
    - IPv4 settings..... 4-57
    - IPv6 settings..... 4-61
    - Default gateway..... 4-59
    - POP3 (e-mail reception)..... 4-62
    - Port Raw..... 4-62
    - RA (Stateless)..... 4-61
    - SMTP (e-mail transmission)..... 4-62
    - SNMP..... 4-62
    - SNMPv3..... 4-62
    - TCP/IP..... 4-56
    - TCP/IP (IPv6)..... 4-61
  - Printer driver..... 2-7
    - Macintosh..... 2-10
    - Windows..... 2-7
  - Top plate..... 1-2
  - Police..... 4-46
  - USB port..... 1-4
  - MP tray priority..... 4-41
  - Print Quality Problems
    - Troubleshooting..... 8-4
  - Energy Star program..... ix
- ## Q
- 
- Print quality..... 4-49
  - Problems..... 8-4
- ## R
- 
- Replacing the toner cartridge..... 7-2
  - Clearing paper jams
    - inside the printer..... 8-23
    - MP tray..... 8-20
    - paper feeder..... mass..... 8-21
    - charger..... 8-24
    - store..... 8-21
    - rear unit..... 8-24
    - Duplex unit..... 8-22
  - Print Resolution..... 4-50
  - Retention of work..... 5-24
    - Quick copy..... 5-26
    - Private printing..... 5-31
    - Printer driver..... 5-37
    - Stored work..... 5-31
    - Verification before printing..... 5-29
  - Carriage return..... 4-53
  - Screen backlight..... 4-87
- ## S
- 
- Security..... 4-100
    - Interface blocking..... 4-108
    - Network..... 4-101
  - Data security..... 4-110
    - SSD initialization..... 4-111
    - Security password..... 4-111
  - Envelope selector..... 1-4
  - Alarm..... 4-82
  - Paper output..... 4-43
  - Specifications..... A-24
  - SSD..... A-10, Glossary-4
    - Format..... 4-86
  - Dynamic Domain Name System (DDNS)..... 2-19
- ## T
- 
- Touches
    - [Cancel] key..... 1-5, 4-4
    - [Document Box] key..... 1-5, 4-5
    - [Delete] key..... 1-5, 4-5
    - [Logout] key..... 1-5, 4-4
    - [Menu] key..... 1-5, 4-4
    - [OK] key..... 1-5, 4-5
    - [Back] key..... 1-5, 4-4
-

[Right Select] key .....	1-5, 4-6
[Left Select] key .....	1-5, 4-6
Arrow keys .....	1-5, 4-5
Number keys .....	1-5, 4-5
Transparent .....	A-18
Type USB keyboard.....	4-97

## U

---

rear unit	
clearing paper jams .....	8-24
Duplex unit	
clearing paper jams .....	8-22

## V

---

Locking the control panel.....	2-20
Seeing	
Careful .....	1-5, 4-3
Data .....	1-5, 4-3
Ready .....	1-5, 4-3

**QUALITY  
CERTIFICATE**

This machine has passed  
all quality controls and  
final inspection.

# PASSIONATE PEOPLE. FROM ALL OVER THE WORLD.



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V.

Bloemlaan 4, 2132 NP Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands Phone:  
+31-20-654-0000 Fax: +31-20-653-1256

## KYOCERA Document Solutions Nederland BV

Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk,  
The Netherlands Phone: +31-20-5877200  
Fax: +31-20-5877260



KYOCERA Document Solutions (UK) Limited 8  
Beacontree Plaza, Gillette Way Reading, Berkshire  
RG2 0BS, United Kingdom Phone: +44-118-931-1500  
Fax: +44-118-931-1108



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Italy SpA

Via Verdi, 89/91 20063 Cernusco s/N.(MI),  
Italy Phone: +39-02-921791 Fax:  
+39-02-92179-600



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Belgium NV

Sint-Martinusweg 199-201 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32-2-7209270  
Fax: +32-2-7208748



## KYOCERA Document Solutions France SAS

Technological Center of St Aubin  
Route de l'Orme 91195 Gif-sur-Yvette CEDEX,  
France  
Phone: +33-1-69852600  
Fax: +33-1-69853409



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Espana, SA

Building Kyocera, Avda. de Manacor No.2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid), Spain Phone:  
+34-91-6318392 Fax: +34-91-6318219



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Finland Oy

Atomitie 5C, 00370 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358-9-47805200  
Fax: +358-9-47805390



## KYOCERA Document Solutions

Europe BV, Amsterdam (NL) Zurich Branch  
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich,  
Switzerland Phone:  
+41-44-9084949 Fax:  
+41-44-9084950



## KYOCERA Document Solutions

Deutschland GmbH  
Otto-Hahn-Strasse 12, 40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49-2159-9180  
Fax: +49-2159-918100



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Austria GmbH

Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95, 1230 Vienna,  
Austria  
Phone: +43-1-863380  
Fax: +43-1-86338-400



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Nordic AB

Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,  
Sweden  
Phone: +46-8-546-550-00  
Fax: +46-8-546-550-10



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Norway NUF

Postboks 150 Oppsal, 0619 Oslo,  
norway  
Phone: +47-22-62-73-00  
Fax: +47-22-62-72-00



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Denmark A/S

Ejby Industrivej 60, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45-70223880  
Fax: +45-45765850



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Portugal Lda.

Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,  
Portugal Phone: +351-21-843-6780 Fax: +351-21-849-3312



## KYOCERA Document Solutions

South Africa (Pty) Ltd.  
49 Kyalami Boulevard,  
Kyalami Business Park 1685 Midrand, South Africa  
Phone: +27-11-540-2600 Fax: +27-11-466-3050



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Russia LLC

Botanichesky pereulok 5, Moscow, 129090,  
Russia  
Phone: +7(495)741-0004  
Fax: +7(495)741-0018



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Middle East

Dubai Internet City, Bldg. 17, Office 157 PO Box  
500817, Dubai, United Arab Emirates Phone:  
+971-04-433-0412



## KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc.

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: +81-6-6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com>

